

**2012-
2017**

NC Building Code Council

NC DOI - Staff

**NC State Building Codes
Amendments – 2012 -
2017**

NC State Building Codes Amendments - Effective 1/1/2017

The following pages represent a summary of the Building Code Council adopted amendments that have been approved by the Rules Review Commission for the time period of 2012 – June 2016

NC State Building Codes Amendments - Effective 1/1/2017

(adopted through June 2016)

(Note: some amendments may indicate earlier effective dates)

The North Carolina Codes are available at www.iccsafe.org/NCDOI for purchase online. Soft-bound copies are available for walk-in purchase only at the following location.

NC Department of Insurance, 322 Chapanoke Road, Suite 200, Raleigh, NC 27603 919-661-5880 x 240 (call for availability)

The following pages represent a summary of the Building Code Council adopted amendments that have been approved by the Rules Review Commission.

2014 NC Electrical Code (based on the 2014 NEC) effective 4/1/2016

2012 NC Administrative, Building, Energy Conservation, Fire, Fuel Gas, Mechanical, Plumbing, Residential Codes (based on the 2009 International Codes)

2015 NC Existing Building Code (based on the 2012 IEBC)

These amendments revise, delete or add to the adopted NC Code.

Table of Contents

NC Administrative Code 9

 106 Permits. (110308 Item B-1)..... 9

 107 Inspections. (140610 Item B-1)..... 11

 107.3 Approval required. (090915 Item B-9)..... 13

NC Electrical Code 14

NC Building Code 24

 605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems. (140909 Item B-6)..... 25

 706 Fire walls. (150310 Item B-20) 27

 TABLE 715.4 Fire Door and Fire Shutter Fire Protection Ratings. (101214 Item B-8)..... 28

 901.6.1 Automatic sprinkler systems. (131210 Item B-1) 29

 902 Definitions. (150609 Item B-4)..... 30

 903.2.8 Group R automatic sprinkler system. (130311 Item B-8) 31

 908.7 Carbon monoxide alarms. (130910 Item B-8)..... 32

 915 Carbon monoxide detection 32

 Table 1004.1.1 Maximum Floor Area Allowances per Occupant. (130910 Item B-1) 35

 1005.1 Minimum required egress width. (120312 Item B-2) 36

 1007.7 Exterior area for assisted rescue. (150310 Item B-2) 37

 1018.1 Construction, corridors; 712.4 Continuity. (150310 Item B-3) 38

 1008.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. (150310 Item B-18)..... 39

 1018.6 Corridor continuity. (130311 Item B-12) 40

 1109.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms. (151215 Item B-3)..... 41

 1109.14 Recreational and sports facilities. (150310 Item B-4)..... 42

 Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14) 43

 1109.14.3.1 Recreational boating facilities. 43

 1210.1 Floors. (110308 Item B-7) 44

 Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14) 45

 1810.3.2.4.1 Preservative treatment..... 45

 Chapter 2, 602.4, 2302.1, 2303.1.4, Chapter 35 Cross-Laminated Timber. (141209 Item B-1) 46

 2303.1.4 Structural glued cross-laminated timber..... 46

Chapter 23 Wood Tables SP. (130910 Item B-2)	48
2902.1.1 Fixture calculations. (131210 Item B-2).....	49
Chapter 34 Existing Structures. (140610 Item B-6)	50
3400 Existing structures.....	50
3404.6 Means of egress capacity factors. (130910 Item B-6)	51
3411.8.3.1 Inclined stairway chairlifts. (110308 Item B-2).....	52
Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14).....	53
3500 Referenced standards.....	53
3600 Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14).....	55
2015 NC Existing Building Code.....	7
New Code Adoption. (130611 Item B-6).....	7
101.11. Accessibility for detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. (150915 Item B-1)	8
403.6.1, 404.6, 603.2, 703.3, 1203.3 Smoke Alarms. (141209 Item B-10)	9
Ch. 2, Section 403.7, 703.2, 1203.13, 1401.2.6, Ch. 47 Carbon Monoxide Detection. (141209 Item B-9) ...	10
407.1 Conformance. (150915 Item B-2)	13
505.1 Level 3 Alteration. (140610 Item B-3).....	14
805.2 Means of Egress. (140610 Item B-4).....	15
805.6 Dead End Corridors. (140610 Item B-5).....	16
2012 NC Energy Conservation Code.....	17
2012 NC Residential Code, Chapter 11	17
Duct leakage to the outside. (120910 Item B-3).....	17
402 Fenestration. (141209 Item B-12).....	18
402.5 Maximum Fenestration U-Factor and SHGC. (140610 Item B-2).....	18
403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. (120611 Item B-10)	20
TABLE 405.5.2(1) Air exchange rate. (140909 Item B-2)	21
501.1 Scope. (120611 Item B-11).....	22
Tables 502.1.2, 502.2(1) and 502.2(2) Building envelope requirements. (120910 Item B-2)	23
Tables 502.1.2, 502.2(1) Building Envelope Requirements. (130311 Item B-10)	23
TABLE 502.1.2 Building Envelope. (141209 Item B-2)	23
TABLE 502.1.2 BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS. (150609 Item B-2)	23
2012 NC Fire Code	27
101.2.1 Appendices. (101214 Item B-30)	27

105.7.7 Flammable and combustible liquids. (130611 Item B-4).....	28
106 Inspections. (141209 Item B-3).....	29
308.1.6.3 Sky lanterns. (150310 Item B-5).....	30
310.9 Hookah or water pipe use. (140909 Item B-5)	31
316.5 Structures and outdoor storage underneath high-voltage transmission lines. (130311 Item B-7)	32
319 Rooftop Gardens and Landscaped Roofs. (140610 Item B-15).....	33
320 Group E in churches, private schools and public schools. (140311 Item B-12).....	34
503.2.1 Dimensions. Fire apparatus access. (121210 Item B-5).....	35
505.1.1 Suite/Room identification. (150609 Item B-3).....	36
509.1.1 Utility Identification. (140610 Item B-16).....	37
605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems. (140909 Item B-6).....	38
902 Definitions. (150609 Item B-4).....	40
903.2.8 Group R automatic sprinkler system. (130311 Item B-8).....	41
908.7 Carbon monoxide alarms. (130910 Item B-8).....	42
909.20.6 Manual smoke removal. (130311 Item B-6).....	43
Chapter 2, Section 915, Chapter 47 Carbon Monoxide Detection. (141209 Item B-4).....	44
1005.1 Minimum required egress width. (120312 Item B-2).....	47
1008.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. (150310 Item B-18).....	48
1018.6 Corridor continuity. (130311 Item B-12)	49
1208.2 Automatic Sprinkler System Exceptions. (140610 Item B-17).....	50
Chapter 17 Fumigation and Thermal Insecticidal Fogging. (140610 Item B-18)	51
2206.2.3 Above-ground tanks located outside, above grade. (130910 Item B-9).....	53
3405.5 Alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids. (120312 Item B-1)	54
Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14).....	55
Chapter 47 Referenced Standards. (140610 Item B-19).....	56
2012 NC Fuel Gas Code	58
310.1.1 Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST). (120312 Item B-3).....	58
310.1.1, Chapter 8 CSST. (141209 Item B-11).....	58
311 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-3a).....	59
403.10.1 Pipe joints. (131210 Item B-4)	60
2012 NC Mechanical Code	61
312.1 Load calculations. (150609 Item B-5)	61

313 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-3b).....	62
TABLE 403.3 MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES. (101214 Item B-2)	63
403.3.1.3 Zone outdoor airflow. (101214 Item B-3).....	64
403.3.2.3.4 Outdoor air intake flow rate. (101214 Item B-4).....	65
505.2 Makeup air required. (131210 Item B-6).....	66
603.4 Duct Construction. (120611 Item B-22).....	67
1202.5 Pipe Fittings. (120611 Item B-3)	68
1203.8 Copper and copper alloy tubing. (120611 Item B-4)	69
1203.3.9 Press connect joints. (120611 Item B-5).....	70
2012 NC Plumbing Code	71
202 General definitions. (151215 Item B-5)	71
202 General Definitions, 605.2 Lead content of water supply pipe and fittings. (130910 Item B-15).....	72
307.2.1.1, 701.7, 715.6, 802.1.5 Condensate drains. (150915 Item B-4).....	73
315 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-3c).....	74
403.1.1 Fixture calculations. (131210 Item B-3).....	75
403.2 Separate facilities. (110308 Item B-4).....	76
403.6.3 Picnic shelters. (130311 Item B-14).....	77
405.3.1 Water closets, urinals, lavatories and bidets. (121210 Item B-4).....	78
416.5 Tempered water for public hand-washing facilities. (151215 Item B-1)	79
417.1 Prefabricated showers and shower compartments. (130611 Item B-1)	80
417.4 Shower compartments. (140311 Item B-8)	81
417.5.2.6 Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials. (140909 Item B-4)	82
504.6 Requirements for discharge piping. (130311 Item B-5).....	83
605.4 Water distribution pipe. (150609 Item B-1)	84
605.5 Pipe Fittings. (120611 Item B-6)	85
605.15.5 Press Connect Joints. (120611 Item B-7)	86
706.4 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends. (140610 Item B-8).....	87
715.1 Sewage Backflow. (141209 Item B-5)	88
Appendix C-1, Rainwater Collection and Distribution Systems. (101214 Item B-10).....	89
2012 NC Residential Code	99
R101.2 Scope. Accessory Buildings and Structures. (130910 Item B-10)	99
R102.7 Existing structures. (150310 Item B-9)	100

R202 Definitions. (130910 Item B-11)	101
Ch. 2, R502.1.6, R502.8.2, R602.1.3, R802.1.5, Ch. 44 Cross-Laminated Timber. (141209 Item B-1)	102
Screen Enclosure. (140610 Item B-21).....	103
R301.2.1.2 Protection of openings. (130311 Item B-9)	106
R302.1, 302.1.1, 302.1.2, 302.2.6 Eave Projections, Soffit Protection, Flame Spread. (121210 Item B-2) .	108
Table R302.1 Exterior walls. (120910 Item B-4) (130910 Item B-12)	110
R302.2, R313.1 Townhouse Sprinkler Option. (100615 Item B-5).....	111
R302.5.1 Opening protection. (120611 Item B-8)	112
Table R302.6 Dwelling/Garage Separation. (150310 Item B-10).....	113
R308.4 Hazardous locations. (130910 Item B-13)	114
R308.4 Hazardous Locations. (150310 Item B-11)	114
R310.1.1 Minimum opening area. (130910 Item B-14)	117
R311.2 Egress door. (101214 Item B-17)	118
R311.4 Vertical egress. (150310 Item B-12)	119
R311.7.1 Width. (140909 Item B-8)	120
R313.1 Townhouse automatic fire sprinkler systems. (120611 Item B-12)	121
R314.3 Smoke Alarm Location. (101214 Item B-5).....	122
R315 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-6b)	123
R322.2.1, R322.3.2 Elevation requirements. (120611 Item B-13).....	124
Table R403.1 Minimum width of concrete or masonry footing. (101214 Item B-19) (120611 Item B-14) .	125
R403.1.4 Minimum depth. (120611 Item B-15).....	126
FIGURE R403.3 (1) CONCRETE AND MASONRY FOUNDATION DETAILS. (101214 Item B-20).....	127
R408.1.1 Foundation vent sizing. (101214 Item B-21)	128
R408.2 Ground vapor retarder. (101214 Item B-22) (120910 Item B-5).....	129
R408.2 Ground vapor retarder. (150310 Item B-13)	129
Chapter 5, Chapter 8 Wood Tables SP. (130910 Item B-3).....	130
Table R502.3.3(2) Cantilever Spans. (120611 Item B-16).....	131
R506.2.3 Vapor retarder. (120611 Item B-17).....	132
R602.10 Wall Bracing. (120611 Item B-21).....	133
Table R602.10.1 Bracing Methods. (150310 Item B-14).....	134
R602.10 Wall bracing. (120312 Item B-4).....	136
R703.7.4.2 Air space. (151215 Item B-2)	137
R703.7.6 Weepholes. (120611 Item B-19).....	138

R703.11.3, R703.11.4 Soffit, Flame Spread. (100914 Item B-3)	139
R703.12. Adhered stone or masonry veneer installation. (150310 Item B-15).....	140
R802.3 Framing details. (101214 Item B-25)	141
R807.1 Attic access. (101214 Items B-6, B-26)	142
R905.2.6 Attachment. (120611 Item B-20).....	143
Duct leakage to the outside. (120910 Item B-3).....	144
N1102 Fenestration. (141209 Item B-12)	145
N1102.2.3 Access hatches and doors. (101214 Item B-1)	147
N1103.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. (120611 Item B-10).....	148
R4605.5 Corrosion Resistance. (131210 Item B-7)	149
Appendix AM104.1 Deck attachment. (131210 Item B-5).....	151
AM106 and AM111 Tables – southern pine spans. (140610 Item B-11).....	152
AM111 Figure – note concerning guards. (140610 Item B-10)	153
N-1 and N-2 Tables – wood and flitch plate beams. (140610 Item B-12).....	154
N-1 and N-2 Tables – wood and flitch plate examples. (140610 Item B-13)	158
Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14)	159

NC Administrative Code

NC Administrative Code

106 Permits. (110308 Item B-1)

106.2.1 Requirements: (NO CHANGE TO SECTION)

Exception: Projects using BIM-IPD process see 106.2.3.1.

106.2.2 Additional data: (NO CHANGE TO SECTION)

Exception: Projects using BIM-IPD process see 106.2.3.1.

106.2.3 Review and Approval: (NO CHANGE TO SECTION)

106.2.3.1 Building Information Modeling – Integrated Project Delivery Projects

When proposed by the permit applicant and when acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, the BIM-IPD process may be utilized, replacing the requirements of 106.2.3, with the following permitting and inspection steps.

1. At the project start, the owner’s project team (Architect, Engineer, Contractor, et al) shall meet with the Code Enforcement Official (CEO) to determine the prevailing code compliance strategy for the full scope of the project, to be documented in an electronic Appendix B format or an equivalent format, acceptable to the CEO.

2. The CEO may issue a single project master permit, based on the initial project description and code compliance strategy agreement.

Commentary: The CEO should work collaboratively to review building components or details as scheduled by the owner’s project team

3. The CEO shall inspect built work, as described in Section 107 of this code.

3.1. Concurrence on compliance with the code, with respect to both the model and built product, shall be gained before inspections are approved.

4. The owner’s project team shall submit a validation document, at project substantial completion, documenting the building as constructed and compliance with the NC State Building Code, for records retention by the Authority Having Jurisdiction.

Validation document: may be a three dimensional model, two dimensional electronic drawings and records, or a combination of both, accurately reflecting the completed building as approved by the code official in the field, and verified with respect to same.

- Where the validation document varies from the approved virtual model regarding building code compliance, the related Architect/Engineer must approve the change.
- Receipt of the validation document shall be a condition on issuance of Certificate of Occupancy.

106.2.3.2 Definitions

BIM: model based technology linked with a data base of project information, using three dimensional, real time dynamic modeling software, to plan all building construction. The model encompasses building geometry, spatial relationships, geographic information, and quantities and properties of building components.

IPD: a project delivery method that integrates key participants (owner, Architect, Engineer, contractor, code official, et al), systems, business structures and practices into a process that collaboratively plans and constructs facilities. The collaborative process begins in early design and continues through all phases of design, fabrication and construction.

Commentary: This applies to any project delivery method employing three dimensional modeling software, to virtually construct all building components, by a collaborative team based process from design start to construction completion.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

107 Inspections. (140610 Item B-1)

[Commentary is included for clarification only and not subject to review.]

SECTION 107 INSPECTIONS

107.1 General. The inspection department shall perform the following inspections:

1. Footing inspection;
2. Under slab inspection, as appropriate;
3. Foundation inspection, ~~wood frame construction~~;
4. Rough-in inspection;
5. Building **framing inspection**;
6. Insulation inspection;
7. Fire protection inspection; and
8. Final inspection.

Commentary: The code enforcement official makes these inspections during certain phases of construction and is not on site at all times when construction is in progress. The code official verifies code compliance and/or code defects visible and subject to discovery during the above listed inspections and spot checks numerous similar items.

Nothing in any of Sections 107.1.1-107.1.8 requirements is intended to prevent partial inspections of the inspection types listed in Section 107.1 "General" as requested by the permit holder as allowed by the local inspection department. Cumulative partial inspections approved by the code official shall satisfy the same degree of readiness for inspection for viewing as described in Sections 107.1.1 – 107.1.8.

Not all items, such as, but not limited to, nailing of roof or other sheathing material, are always visible at framing inspection, but remain the responsibility of the permit holder to comply with the code.

Temporary electrical service poles may be inspected at any phase of construction as requested by the permit holder. Temporary utility (TU) applications deemed safe by the AHJ or as otherwise permitted by the code shall be allowed.

107.1.1 Footing inspection. Footing inspections shall be made after the trenches are excavated, all grade stakes are installed, all reinforcing steel and supports are in place and **appropriately** tied, **and** all necessary forms and bulkheads are in place and braced, ~~and~~ before any concrete is placed.

107.1.2 Under-slab inspection. Under-slab inspections, as appropriate, shall be made after all materials and equipment to be concealed by the concrete slab are completed.

107.1.3 Foundation inspection, crawl space. Foundation and crawl space inspections shall be made after all foundation supports are installed. ~~The inspection is to check foundation supports, crawl space leveling, ground clearances and positive drainage when required.~~

Commentary: Foundation inspections are conducted to verify correct installation and proper bearing support. Poured concrete and masonry walls that have reinforcement steel should be inspected prior to concrete placement. Crawl space leveling, ground clearances, positive drainage and waterproofing/dampproofing, when required, may be inspected at future inspections prior to concealment.

107.1.4 Rough-in inspection. Rough-in inspections shall be made when all building framing and parts of the electrical, plumbing, fire protection, or heating-ventilation or cooling system that will be hidden from view in the finished building have been **placed, but** before any wall, ceiling **finish, or** building insulation is installed.

Commentary: Plumbing, mechanical, and electrical components installed underground should be considered as rough-in inspections and may be inspected at any point during construction prior to covering.

107.1.5 Building Framing Inspection. Framing inspections shall be made after the roof (excluding permanent roof coverings), wall, ceiling, and floor framing is complete with appropriate blocking, bracing, and firestopping in place. The following items shall be in place and visible for inspection:

1. Pipes;
2. Chimneys and vents;
3. Flashing for roofs and chimneys, and wall openings;
4. Insulation baffles; and
5. All lintels that are required to be bolted to the framing for support shall not be covered by any exterior or interior wall or ceiling finish material before approval. Work may continue without approval for lintels supported on masonry or concrete.

Commentary: Intent of this section is to identify a building's level of readiness and what can be visible at this stage of construction. This stage of construction is intended to review structural components. The permanent roof covering may or may not be installed prior to framing inspection.

The following items should be in place and visible for inspection: pipes, chimneys and vents, flashing, and required exterior water-resistant barriers.

107.1.6 Insulation inspection. Insulation inspection shall be made after an approved building framing and rough-in inspection and after the permanent roof covering is installed, with all insulation and vapor retarders in place, but before any wall or ceiling covering is applied.

Commentary: Insulation baffles that cannot be seen at this inspection, such as vaulted ceilings with concealed rafter cavities, should have baffles installed at framing inspection for verification.

It is acceptable that wall cavity insulation enclosed by an air barrier material behind tubs, showers, and fireplace units installed on exterior walls may not be observable by the code official.

107.1.7 Fire protection inspection. Fire protection inspections shall be made in all buildings where any material is used for fire protection purposes. The permit holder or his agent shall notify the inspection department after all fire protection materials are in place. Fire protection materials shall not be concealed until inspected and approved by the code enforcement official.

Commentary: Fire protection inspection is typically performed in commercial building structures and is required in addition to any special inspection as listed in Chapter 17 of the North Carolina Building Code.

107.1.8 Final inspection. Final inspections shall be made for each trade after completion of the work authorized under the technical codes.

Commentary: Each trade shall complete a final inspection giving approval to permitted work. Work required by the technical codes shall be complete before being requested. Temporary power and temporary certificate of occupancy (TCO) requests are allowed prior to final inspection.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.
NC Administrative Code

107.3 Approval required. (090915 Item B-9)

107.3 Approval required. Work shall not be done beyond the point indicated in each successive inspection without first obtaining the approval of the code enforcement official. The code enforcement official, upon notification, shall make the requested inspections and shall either indicate the portion of the construction that is satisfactory as completed, or shall notify the permit holder or an agent of the permit holder that the work fails to comply with the technical codes. The code enforcement official shall identify code violations and when requested shall identify the specific sections of the technical codes. Any work that does not comply shall be corrected and shall not be covered or concealed until authorized by the code enforcement official.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

NC Electrical Code

2014 NC Electrical Code

2014 NEC with NC Amendments. (150609 Item B-6)

This Rule was adopted to update the NC Electrical Code to the 2014 National Electrical Code edition. NC amendments to the 2014 NEC are attached.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is **April 1, 2016**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Article 10 - ADMINISTRATIVE SECTION

10.1 TITLE

These Administrative Regulations along with the requirements included in the 2014 Edition of the National Electrical Code (NFPA-70 - 2014) as adopted by the North Carolina Building Code Council on **December 15, 2015, to be effective April 1, 2016**, with the following amendments:

(1) **110.26(E)(2)**

(2) 210.8(A)(3) (Exception No. 2)

(3) **210.8(A)(7)**

(4) 210.8(D)

(5) **210.12(A)**

(6) **210.52(I)**

(7) 250.50

(8) **250.53(A)(2) (Exception No. 2)**

(9) **310.15(B)(7)**

(10) 334.15(C)

(11) **404.2(C)(8)**

(12) 406.4(D)

(13) **422.5**

shall be known as the North Carolina Electrical **Code**, may be cited as such or as the State Electrical **Code**, and will be referred to herein as “the code” or “this code”.

10.2 SCOPE

Article **80**, Administration and **Enforcement**, of the code is hereby not adopted and does not apply for this code. For Scope and Exceptions to Applicability of Technical Codes, refer to the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

10.3 PURPOSE

The purpose of the code is to provide minimum standards, **provisions**, and requirements of safe and stable design, methods of **construction**, and uses of materials in buildings or structures hereafter erected, constructed, enlarged, altered, repaired, moved, converted to other **uses, or** demolished and to regulate the electrical systems, equipment, maintenance, **use**, and occupancy of all buildings or structures. All regulations contained in this code have a reasonable and substantial connection with the public health, safety, morals, or general welfare, and their provisions shall be construed liberally to those ends.

10.4 ADMINISTRATION

For administrative regulations pertaining to inspection (rough-ins and finals), **permits**, and Certificates of Electrical Compliance, see local ordinances and the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies. When the provisions of other codes are determined to be contrary to the requirements of this code, this code shall prevail.

10.5 DEFINITION

Unless the context indicates otherwise, whenever the word “building” is used in this chapter, it shall be deemed to include the word “structure” and all installations such as plumbing systems, heating systems, cooling systems, electrical systems, **elevators**, and other installations which are parts of, or **are** permanently affixed to, the building or structure.

10.6 APPLICATION OF CODE TO EXISTING BUILDINGS

For requirements of existing structures, refer to the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies.

10.7 SERVICE UTILITIES

10.7.1 Connection of Service Utilities – No person shall make connections from a utility, source of energy, fuel, or power to any building or system which is regulated by the technical codes until approved by the Inspection Department and a Certificate of Compliance is issued (General Statute 143-143.2)

10.7.2 Authority to disconnect Service Utilities – The Inspection Department shall have the authority to require disconnecting a utility service to the building, structure, or system regulated by the technical codes in case of emergency or where necessary to eliminate an imminent hazard to life or property. The Inspection Department shall have the authority to disconnect a utility service when a building has been occupied prior to Certificate of Compliance or entry into the building for purposes of making inspections cannot be readily granted. The Inspection Department shall notify the serving utility and whenever possible the owner or occupant of the building, structure, or service system of the decision to disconnect prior to taking such action. If not notified prior to disconnecting, the owner or occupant shall be notified in writing within eight (8) working hours (General Statutes 143-143.2, 153A-365, 153A-366, 160A-425 and 160A-426).

10.8 TEMPORARY POWER

10.8.1 Scope. The provisions of this section apply to the utilization of portions of the wiring system within a building to facilitate construction.

10.8.2 Provisions for Temporary Power. The Code enforcement official shall give permission and issue a permit to energize the electrical service when the provisions of 10.8 and the following requirements have been met:

- 1) The service wiring and equipment, including the meter socket enclosure, shall be installed, the service wiring terminated, and the service equipment covers installed.
- 2) The portions of the electrical system that are to be energized shall be complete and physically protected.
- 3) The grounding electrode system shall be complete.
- 4) The grounding and the grounded conductors shall be terminated in the service equipment.
- 5) At least one receptacle outlet with ground fault circuit interrupter protection for personnel shall be installed with the circuit wiring terminated.
- 6) The applicable requirements of the North Carolina Electrical Code apply.

10.8.3 Uses Prohibited. In no case shall any portion of the permanent wiring be energized until the portions have been inspected and approved by an electrical Code Enforcement Official. Failure to comply with this section may result in disconnection of power or revocation of permit.

10.8.4 Application for Temporary Power. Application for temporary power shall be made by and in the name of the applicant. The application shall explicitly state the portions of the energized electrical system, mechanical system, or plumbing system for which application is made, and its intended use and duration.

10.8.5 Security and Notification. The applicant shall maintain the energized electrical system or that portion of the building containing the energized electrical system in a secured and locked manner or under constant supervision to exclude unauthorized personnel. The applicant shall alert personnel working in the vicinity of the energized electrical system to its presence.

10.9 Requirements of Other State Agencies, Occupational Licensing Boards, or Commissions

The North Carolina State Building Codes do not include all additional requirements for buildings and structures that may be imposed by other State agencies, occupational licensing boards, and commissions. It shall be the responsibility of a permit holder, design professional, contractor, or occupational license holder to determine whether any additional requirements exist.

AMENDMENT 110.26(E)(2)

~~(2) Outdoor. Outdoor installations shall comply with 110.26(E)(2)(a) and (b).~~

~~(a) Installation Requirements. Outdoor electrical equipment shall be installed in suitable enclosures and shall be protected from accidental contact by unauthorized personnel, or by vehicular traffic, or by accidental spillage or leakage from piping systems. The working clearance space shall include the zone described in 110.26(A). No architectural appurtenance or other equipment shall be located in this zone.~~

~~(b) Dedicated Equipment Space. The space equal to the width and depth of the equipment, and extending from grade to a height of 1.8 m (6 ft) above the equipment, shall be dedicated to the electrical installation. No piping or other equipment foreign to the electrical installation shall be located in this zone.~~

AMENDMENT 210.8(A)(3)

210.8 (A) (3) Outdoors

Exception No. 1 to (3): Receptacles that are not readily accessible and are supplied by a branch circuit dedicated to electric snow-melting, deicing, or pipeline and vessel heating equipment shall be permitted to be installed in accordance with 426.28 or 427.22, as applicable.

Exception No. 2 to (3): A single outlet receptacle supplied by a dedicated branch circuit which is located and identified for specific use by a sewage lift pump.

AMENDMENT 210.8(A)(7)

210.8(A) (7) Sinks — located in areas other than kitchens where receptacles are installed within 1.8 m (6 ft) of the outside edge of the sink.

AMENDMENT 210.8(D)

210.8 (D) Kitchen Dishwasher Branch Circuit. GFCI protection shall be provided for outlets that supply dishwashers installed in dwelling unit locations.

AMENDMENT 210.12

210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection. Arc-fault circuit-interrupter protection shall be provided as required in 210.12(A) (B), and (C). The arc-fault circuit interrupter shall be installed in a ~~readily an~~ accessible location.

(A) Dwelling Units. All 120-volt, single-phase, 15- and 20-ampere branch circuits supplying outlets or devices installed in dwelling unit ~~kitchens,~~ family rooms, dining rooms, living rooms, parlors, libraries, dens, bedrooms, sunrooms, recreation rooms, closets, hallways, ~~laundry areas,~~ or similar rooms or areas shall be protected by any of the means described in 210.12(A)(1) through (6):

AMENDMENT 210.52(I)

210.52 (I) Foyers. Foyers that are not part of a hallway in accordance with 210.52(H) and that have an area that is greater than 5.6 m² (60 ft²) shall have at least one receptacle(s) located in each wall space 900 mm (3 ft) or more in width. ~~Doorways, door side windows that extend to the floor, and similar openings shall not be considered wall space.~~

AMENDMENT 250.50

250.50 Grounding Electrode System. All grounding electrodes as described in 250.52(A)(1) through (A)(7) that are ~~available present~~ at each building or structure served shall be bonded together to form the grounding electrode system. Where none of these grounding electrodes exist, one or more of the grounding electrodes specified in 250.52(A)(4) through (A)(8) shall be installed and used.

AMENDMENT 250.53(A)(2)

250.53 (A) (2)

Exception No. 1: If a **single** rod, pipe, or plate grounding electrode has a resistance to earth of 25 ohms or less, the supplemental electrode shall not be required.

Exception No. 2: The supplemental ground electrode shall not be required at temporary electrical service installation (saw service pole) at a construction site for one and two-family residences, provided the temporary electrical service does not exceed 150 volts to ground or 100A.

AMENDMENT 310.15(B)(7)

310.15 (B) (7) 120/240-Volt, Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders.

~~For one family dwellings and the individual dwelling units of two family and multifamily dwellings, service and feeder conductors supplied by a single phase, 120/240 volt system shall be permitted be sized in accordance with 310.15(B)(7)(1) through (4).~~

~~(1) For a service rated 100 through 400 A, the service conductors supplying the entire load associated with a one family dwelling, or the service conductors supplying the entire load associated with an individual dwelling unit in a two family or multifamily dwelling, shall be permitted to have an ampacity not less than 83 percent of the service rating.~~

~~(2) For a feeder rated 100 through 400 A, the feeder conductors supplying the entire load associated with a one family dwelling, or the feeder conductors supplying the entire load associated with an individual dwelling, unit in a two family or multifamily dwelling, shall be permitted to have an ampacity not less than 83 percent of the feeder rating.~~

~~(3) In no case shall a feeder for an individual dwelling unit be required to have an ampacity greater than that specified in 310.15(B)(7)(1) or (2).~~

~~(4) Grounded conductors shall be permitted to be sized smaller than the ungrounded conductors, provided that the requirements of 220.61 and 230.42 for service conductors or the requirements of 215.2 and 220.61 for feeder conductors are met.~~

~~Informational Note No. 1: The conductor ampacity may require other correction or adjustment factors applicable to the conductor installation.~~

~~Informational Note No. 2: See Example D7 in Annex D.~~

Replace with 2011 NEC text & table:

310.15 (B) (7) 120/240-Volt, 3-Wire, Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders. For individual dwelling units of one-family, two-family, and multifamily dwellings, conductors, as listed in Table 310.15(B)(7), shall be permitted as 120/240-volt, 3-wire, single-phase service-entrance conductors, service-lateral conductors, and feeder conductors that serve as the main power feeder to each dwelling unit and are installed in raceway or cable with or without an equipment grounding conductor. For application of this section, the main power feeder shall be the feeder between the main disconnect and the panelboard that supplies, either by branch circuits or by feeders, or both, all loads that are part of or associated with the dwelling unit. The feeder conductors to a dwelling unit shall not be required to have an allowable ampacity rating greater than their service-entrance conductors. The grounded conductor shall be permitted to be smaller than the ungrounded conductors, provided the requirements of 215.2, 220.61, and 230.42 are met.

Table 310.15(B)(7) Conductor Types and Sizes for 120/240-Volt, 3-Wire, Single-Phase Dwelling Services and Feeders. Conductor Types RHH, RHW, RHW-2, THHN, THHW, THW, THW-2, THWN, THWN-2, XHHW, XHHW-2, SE, USE, USE-2

Service or Feeder Rating (Amperes)	Conductor (AWG or kcmil)	
	Copper	Aluminum or Copper-Clad Aluminum
100	4	2
110	3	1
125	2	1/0
150	1	2/0
175	1/0	3/0
200	2/0	4/0
225	3/0	250
250	4/0	300
300	250	350
350	350	500
400	400	600

AMENDMENT 334.15(C)

334.15 (C) In Unfinished Basements and Crawl Spaces. Where cable is run at angles with joists in unfinished basements, ~~and crawl spaces~~, it shall be permissible to secure cables not smaller than two 6 AWG or three 8 AWG conductors directly to the lower edges of the joists. Smaller cables shall be run either through bored holes in joists or on running boards. Nonmetallic-sheathed cable installed on the wall of an unfinished basement shall be permitted to be installed in a listed conduit or tubing or shall be protected in accordance with 300.4. Conduit or tubing shall be provided with a suitable insulating bushing or adapter at the point the cable enters the raceway. The sheath of the nonmetallic-sheathed cable shall extend through the conduit or tubing and into the outlet or device box not less than 6 mm (1/4 in.). The cable shall be secured within 300 mm (12 in.) of the point where the cable enters the conduit or tubing. Metal conduit, tubing, and metal outlet boxes shall be connected to an equipment grounding conductor complying with the provisions of 250.86 and 250.148.

AMENDMENT 404.2(C)(8)

Article 404.2(C)

(8) Where installed in residential one- and two- family dwellings

AMENDMENT 406.4(D)

406.4 (D) Replacements. Replacement of receptacles shall comply with 406.4(D)(1) through (D)(6), as applicable. Arc-fault circuit-interrupter type and ground-fault circuit-interrupter type receptacles shall be installed in ~~a readily an~~ accessible location.

(4) Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection. Where a receptacle outlet is supplied by a branch circuit that requires arc-fault circuit-interrupter protection as specified elsewhere in this *Code*, a replacement receptacle at this outlet shall be one of the following:

- (1) A listed outlet branch-circuit type arc-fault circuit-interrupter receptacle
- (2) A receptacle protected by a listed outlet branch-circuit type arc-fault circuit-interrupter type receptacle
- (3) A receptacle protected by a listed combination type arc-fault circuit-interrupter type circuit breaker

Exception: Non-grounding type receptacles.

AMENDMENT 422.5

422.5 Ground-Fault Circuit-Interrupter (GFCI) Protection. The device providing GFCI protection required in this article shall be readily accessible.

Exception: For one- and two-family residences, the device providing the GFCI protection required in this article shall be accessible.

2014 NC Electrical Code

210.12 (B) Branch Circuit Extensions or Modifications – Dwelling Units. (151215 Item B-9)

210.12 Arc-Fault Circuit-Interrupter Protection.

(B) Branch Circuit Extensions or Modifications – Dwelling Units.

In any of the areas specified in 210.12(A), where branch-circuit wiring is modified, replaced, or extended, the branch circuit shall be protected by one of the following:

- (1) A listed combination-type AFCI located at the origin of the branch circuit.
- (2) A listed outlet branch-circuit type AFCI located at the first receptacle outlet of the existing branch circuit.

*Exception: AFCI protection shall not be required where the extension of the existing conductors is not more than ~~7.8 m (6~~
~~ft) 15.24 m (50 ft) and does not include any additional outlets or devices.~~*

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2014 NC Electrical Code

300.9 Raceways in Wet Locations Above Grade. (150915 Item B-3)

300.9 Raceways in Wet Locations Above Grade. Where raceways are in wet locations above grade, the interior of these raceways shall be considered to be a wet location. Insulated conductors and cables installed in raceway in wet locations above grade shall comply with 310.10(C).

Exception: The raceway shall not be considered a wet location if:

- (1) The section of raceway routed in a wet location above grade does not exceed 1500 mm (5 ft) in length;
- (2) Any fittings or conduit bodies are watertight and listed for use in wet locations; and
- (3) Raceway is open at its termination point in a dry location.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2014 NC Electrical Code

338.10 (B) (4) Installation Methods for Branch Circuits and Feeders. (151215 Item B-8)

338.10 Uses Permitted.

(B) Branch Circuits or Feeders

(4) Installation Methods for Branch Circuits and Feeders.

(a) *Interior Installations.* In addition to the provisions of this article, Type SE service entrance cable used for interior wiring shall comply with the installation requirements of Part II of Article 334, excluding 334.80.

~~Where installed in thermal insulation the ampacity shall be in accordance with the 60°C (140°F) conductor temperature rating. The maximum conductor temperature rating shall be permitted to be used for ampacity adjustment and correction purposes, if the final derated ampacity does not exceed that for a 60°C (140°F) rated conductor.~~

For Type SE cable with ungrounded conductor sizes 10 AWG and smaller, where installed in thermal insulation, the ampacity shall be in accordance with 60°C (140°F) conductor temperature rating.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

NC Building Code

2012 NC Building Code

Table 508.4 Required Separation of Occupancies. (150310 Item B-1)

**TABLE 508.4
REQUIRED SEPARATION OF OCCUPANCIES**

OCCUPANCY	A ^d	B	E	F-1	F-2	H-1	H-2	H-3	H-4	H-5	I-1	I-2	I-3	I-4	M	R	S-1	S-2 ^b	U
B	S	1	2 ^c	1	2	1	NP	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	1	1	<u>2</u> ₁	1	1
	NS	2	2 ^c	2	3	2	NP	3	2	2	2 ^a	2	NP	2	2	2	2	<u>3</u> ₂	2
M	S	1	1	1	2	1	NP	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	2 ^e	1	<u>2</u> ₁	1	1
	NS	2	2	2	3	2	NP	3	2	2	2 ^a	2	NP	2	2	2 ^e	2	<u>3</u> ₂	2
S-1	S	1	<u>2</u> ₁	1	2	1	NP	2	1	1	1	2	1	1	<u>2</u> ₁	1	3 ^e	1	1
	NS	2	<u>3</u> ₂	2	3	2	NP	3	2	2	2	2	NP	2	2	<u>3</u> ₂	2	3 ^e	2

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems. (140909 Item B-6)

605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems. Solar photovoltaic power systems shall be installed in accordance with Sections 605.11.1 through 605.11.2, the *International Building Code* and NFPA 70.

605.11.1 Access and pathways. Roof access, pathways, and spacing requirements shall be provided in accordance with Sections 605.11.1.1 through 605.11.1.3.3.

Exceptions:

1. Detached, non-habitable Group U structures including, but not limited to, parking shade structures, carports, solar trellises, and similar structures.
2. Roof access, pathways, and spacing requirements need not be provided where the fire chief has determined that rooftop operations shall not be employed.

605.11.1.1 Roof access points. Roof access points shall be located in areas that do not require the placement of ground ladders over openings such as windows or doors, and located at strong points of building construction in locations where the access point does not conflict with overhead obstructions such as tree limbs, wires, or signs.

605.11.1.2 Solar photovoltaic systems for Group R-3 buildings. Solar photovoltaic systems for Group R-3 buildings shall comply with Sections 605.11.1.2.1 through 605.11.1.2.5.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to one and two family dwelling and townhomes.

605.11.1.2.1 Size of solar photovoltaic array. Each photovoltaic array shall be limited to 150 feet (45 720 mm) by 150 feet (45 720 mm). Multiple arrays shall be separated by a 3-foot-wide (914 mm) clear access pathway.

605.11.1.2.2 Hip roof layouts. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings with hip roof layouts shall be located in a manner that provides a 3-foot-wide (914 mm) clear access pathway from the eave to the ridge on each roof slope where panels and modules are located. The access pathway shall be at a location on the building capable of supporting the fire fighters accessing the roof.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or less.

605.11.1.2.3 Single-ridge roofs. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings with a single ridge shall be located in a manner that provides two, 3-foot-wide (914 mm) access pathways from the eave to the ridge on each roof slope where panels and modules are located.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or less.

605.11.1.2.4 Roofs with hips and valleys. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings with roof hips and valleys shall not be located closer than 18 inches (457 mm) to a hip or a valley where panels/modules are to be placed on both sides of a hip or valley. Where panels are to be located on only one side of a hip or valley that is of equal length, the panels shall be permitted to be placed directly adjacent to the hip or valley.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or less.

605.11.1.2.5 Allowance for smoke ventilation operations. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the ridge in order to allow for fire department smoke ventilation operations.

Exception: Panels and modules shall be permitted to be located up to the roof ridge where an alternative ventilation method *approved* by the fire chief has been provided or where the fire chief has determined vertical ventilation techniques shall not be employed.

605.11.1.3 Other than Group R-3 buildings. Access to systems for buildings, other than those containing Group R-3 occupancies, shall be provided in accordance with Sections 605.11.1.3.1 through 605.11.1.3.3.

Exception: Where it is determined by the fire code official that the roof configuration is similar to that of a Group R-3 occupancy, the residential access and ventilation requirements in Sections 605.11.1.2.1 through 605.11.1.2.5 shall be permitted to be used.

605.11.1.3.1 Access. There shall be a minimum 6 foot-wide (1829 mm) clear perimeter around the edges of the roof.

Exception: Where either axis of the building is 250 feet (76 200 mm) or less, the clear perimeter around the edges of the roof shall be permitted to be reduced to a minimum 4 foot wide (1290 mm).

605.11.1.3.2 Pathways. The solar installation shall be designed to provide designated pathways. The pathways shall meet the following requirements:

1. The pathway shall be over areas capable of supporting fire fighters accessing the roof.
2. The centerline axis pathways shall be provided in both axes of the roof. Centerline axis pathways shall run where the roof structure is capable of supporting fire fighters accessing the roof.
3. Pathways shall be a straight line not less than 4 feet (1290 mm) clear to roof standpipes or ventilation hatches.
4. Pathways shall provide not less than 4 feet (1290 mm) clear around roof access hatch with not less than one singular pathway not less than 4 feet (1290 mm) clear to a parapet or roof edge.

605.11.1.3.3 Smoke ventilation. The solar installation shall be designed to meet the following requirements:

1. Arrays shall not be greater than 150 feet (45 720 mm) by 150 feet (45 720 mm) in distance in either axis in order to create opportunities for fire department smoke ventilation operations.
2. Smoke ventilation options between array sections shall be one of the following:
 - 2.1 A pathway 8 feet (2438 mm) or greater in width.
 - 2.2 A 4-foot (1290 mm) or greater in width pathway and bordering roof skylights or gravity-operated dropout smoke and heat vents on not less than one side.
 - 2.3 A 4-foot (1290 mm) or greater in width pathway and bordering all sides of non-gravity-operated dropout smoke and heat vents.
 - 2.4 A 4-foot (1290 mm) or greater in width pathway and bordering 4-foot by 8-foot (1290 mm by 2438 mm) “venting cutouts” every 20 feet (6096 mm) on alternating sides of the pathway.

605.11.2 Ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays. Ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays shall comply with Section 605.11 and this section. Setback requirements shall not apply to ground-mounted, free-standing photovoltaic arrays. A clear, brush-free area of 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be required for ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

706 Fire walls. (150310 Item B-20)

706.2 Structural stability. *Fire walls* shall have sufficient structural stability under fire conditions to allow collapse of construction on either side without collapse of the wall for the duration of time indicated by the required *fire-resistance rating*.

Exception: For *fire walls* separating Group R-2 from Group S-2 buildings of different construction types per footnotes c and d of Table 706.4, the structural wall of the S-2 building shall be permitted to serve as the *fire wall* between the Group R-2 and Group S-2 buildings and shall be permitted to be laterally supported by floor construction of the same rating as the wall.

706.3 Materials. *Fire walls* shall be of any approved noncombustible materials.

Exception: Buildings of Type V construction.

706.4 Fire-resistance rating. *Fire walls* shall have a *fire-resistance rating* of not less than that required by Table 706.4.

**TABLE 706.4
FIRE WALL FIRE-RESISTANCE RATINGS**

GROUP	FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (hours)
A, B, E, H-4, I, R-1, R-2 ^{c,d} , U	3 ^a
F-1, H-3 ^b , H-5, M, S-1	3
H-1, H-2	4 ^b
F-2, S-2 ^{c,d} , R-3, R-4	2

a. In Type II or V construction, walls shall be permitted to have a 2-hour fire-resistance rating.

b. For Group H-1, H-2, or H-3 building, also see Sections 415.4 and 415.5.

c. Where *fire walls* are used to separate R-2 buildings of Type V construction from S-2 buildings of Type IB construction, a 2 hour exterior wall of the Type IB S-2 structure shall be permitted to satisfy the requirements of Section 706.2 and Table 706.4 without requiring a *fire wall* on the R-2 building. The floor construction of the S-2 structure shall have a fire-resistance rating equal to or greater than the exterior walls of the S-2 structure when the floor provides lateral stability to the vertical construction.

d. Where *fire walls* are used to separate R-2 buildings of Type III construction from S-2 buildings of Type IA construction, a 3 hour exterior wall of the Type IA S-2 structure shall be permitted to satisfy the requirements of Section 706.2 and Table 706.4 without requiring a *fire wall* on the R-2 building. The floor construction of the S-2 structure shall have a fire-resistance rating equal to or greater than the exterior walls of the S-2 structure when the floor provides lateral stability to the vertical construction.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

TABLE 715.4 Fire Door and Fire Shutter Fire Protection Ratings. (101214 Item B-8)

TABLE 715.4 Fire Door and Fire Shutter Fire Protection Ratings

(add footnote "c" in Table, to "Type of Assembly, Fire partitions, corridor walls)

c. Fire-rated bathroom/restroom doors are not required when opening onto fire-rated halls, corridors, exit access provided:

(1) no other rooms open off the bathroom/restroom,

(2) no gas or electric appliances other than electric hand dryers are located in the bathroom/restroom,

(3) the walls, partitions, floor and ceiling of the bathroom/restroom have a fire rating at least equal to the rating of the hall, corridor or exit access, and

(4) the bathroom/restroom is not used for any other purpose than it is designed.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is September 1, 2011.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

901.6.1 Automatic sprinkler systems. (131210 Item B-1)

901.6.1 Automatic sprinkler systems. Automatic sprinkler systems shall be monitored by an *approved* supervising station.

Exceptions:

1. A supervising station is not required for *automatic sprinkler systems* protecting one- and two-family dwellings.
2. Limited area systems serving fewer than 20 sprinklers.
3. A group R-2 building sprinklered in accordance with NFPA 13R where sprinklers are provided for porches, balconies, corridors and stairs that are open and attached and installed in accordance with Section 903.4. At a minimum an approved audible alarm device shall be provided on every sprinklered R-2 building in accordance with Section 903.4.2 of the North Carolina Fire Code. No on-site supervision is required at a constantly attended location.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Section 902 Definitions

Night Club. ~~An establishment meeting all of the following—~~ An A-2 occupancy meeting all of the following conditions:

1. ~~Has a posted capacity or occupant load that exceeds one occupant per 15 square foot (1.39m²) net~~ The aggregate floor area of concentrated use and standing space that is used for dancing or viewing of performers exceeds 10 percent of the Group A-2 fire area, excluding adjacent lobby areas ; and
2. Provides live or recorded entertainment by performing artist; and
3. ~~Serves~~ Allows alcoholic beverages beverage consumption.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Fire Code, Section 902 Definitions.]

903.2.8 Group R automatic sprinkler system. (130311 Item B-8)

[F] **903.2.8 Group R.** An **automatic sprinkler system** shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3 throughout all buildings with a Group R **fire area**, except as provided for in Section 903.2.8.1.

Exceptions:

1. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in new adult and child care facilities located in existing Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies.
2. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in ~~Group R-1~~ *temporary overflow shelters*.
3. Group R-2 buildings housing farm workers and their families located outside of a municipality's building rules jurisdiction that are not exempted by Section 903.2.8.1 may install a 13D multipurpose sprinkler system where all of the following conditions exist:
 - 3.1. The Group R building cannot exceed two stories in height.
 - 3.2. The Group R building cannot exceed 2500 square feet (232 m²) in area.
 - 3.3. The Group R building shall have two remote means of egress.
4. Group R-2 fire areas in fire stations may install a 13D sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.5.1 when separated from other occupancies by a fire wall where all of the following conditions exist.
 - 4.1. The Group R building cannot exceed one story in height,
 - 4.2. The Group R fire area cannot exceed 2500 square feet (232 m²) in area.
 - 4.3. The Group R fire area has two remote means of egress.
5. An automatic sprinkler system is not required in camping units located within a campground where all of the following conditions exist.
 - 5.1. The camping unit is limited to one story in height,
 - 5.2. The camping unit is less than 400 square feet (37 m²) in area.
 - 5.3. The camping unit does not have a kitchen.

[F] **903.2.8.1 Group R Migrant Housing.** Migrant housing as defined by GS 95-223 shall be exempt from the requirements of Section 903.2.8 when all of the following conditions exist:

1. The Group R building is not more than one story in height.
2. The Group R building meets all of the requirements of GS 95-222 through **GS 95-229.1** (Chapter 95, Article 19) and 29 CFR 1910.142, as amended.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Fire Code, Section 903.2.8]

2012 NC Building Code

908.7 Carbon monoxide alarms. (130910 Item B-8)

[Note: Section 908.7, Carbon Monoxide Alarms has been incorporated into Section 915.]

Chapter 2, Section 915, Chapter 35 Carbon Monoxide Detection. (141209 Item B-4)

915 Carbon monoxide detection

(Add the following definition to)

SECTION 202

GENERAL DEFINITIONS

[B] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

SECTION 915

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

915.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 915.1.1 through 915.6.

915.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group I-1, I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 915.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6 exist.

915.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

915.1.3 Forced air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms where carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an *approved* location.

915.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:
 - 2.1 In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom; or
 - 2.2 On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

915.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the private garage and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.
2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.

4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a private garage and dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms.

915.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 915.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 of the International Building Code or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the International Building Code shall not be considered a private garage.

915.2 Locations. Where required by Section 915.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 915.2.1 through 915.2.3.

915.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in dwelling units outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

915.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in sleeping units.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the sleeping unit where the sleeping unit or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

915.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that it staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or less.

915.3 Detection equipment. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 915.1 through 915.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 915.4 or with carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 915.5.

915.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 915.4.1 through 915.4.3.

915.4.1 Power source. Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.

915.4.2 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

915.4.3 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

915.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 915.5.1 through 915.5.3.

915.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075.

915.5.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 915.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

915.5.3 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.

915.6 Maintenance. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

(Revise Chapter 35 as follows)

NFPA 720 – 09 – 12

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Fire Code, Section 915, 2012 NC Fuel Gas Code, Section 311.4, and 2012 NC Mechanical Code, Section 313.4, Carbon Monoxide Detection.]

TABLE 1004.1.1

MAXIMUM FLOOR AREA ALLOWANCES PER OCCUPANT

Assembly without fixed seats

Unconcentrated (tables and chairs) ^a

Business areas ^a

Add the following footnote to “Assembly – unconcentrated (tables and chairs)” and to “Business areas”:

a. An assembly occupancy conference room that is accessory to a Group B office occupancy and meeting the requirements of Section 303.1, exception 2, shall be calculated at 100 square feet per occupant for determining the overall occupant load of the associated floor. The assembly occupancy shall be calculated at 15 square feet per occupant for the purpose of determining egress from the room containing the assembly occupancy.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

1005.1 Minimum required egress width. (120312 Item B-2)

1005.1 Minimum required egress width. The *means of egress* width shall not be less than required by this section. The total width of *means of egress* in inches (mm) shall not be less than the total *occupant load* served by the *means of egress* multiplied by 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) per occupant for stairways and by 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant for other egress components. The width shall not be less than specified elsewhere in this code. Multiple *means of egress* shall be sized such that the loss of any one *means of egress* shall not reduce the available capacity to less than 50 percent of the required capacity. The maximum capacity required from any *story* of a building shall be maintained to the termination of the *means of egress*.

Exceptions:

1. *Means of egress* complying with Section 1028.

2. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches (mm), of *means of egress stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by the *stairway* by a *means of egress* capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an *emergency voice/alarm communications system* in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

3. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches (mm), of *means of egress* components other than *stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by such components by a *means of egress* capacity factor of 0.15 inch (3.8 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an *emergency voice/alarm communications system* in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Fire Code, Section 1005.1.]

1007.7 Exterior area for assisted rescue. (150310 Item B-2)

1007.7 Exterior area for assisted rescue. The exterior area for assisted rescue must be open to the outside air and meet the requirements of Section 1007.6.1. Separation walls shall comply with the requirements of Section 705 for *exterior walls*. Where walls or openings are between the area for assisted rescue and the interior of the building, the building *exterior walls* within 10 feet (3048 mm) horizontally of a nonrated wall or unprotected opening shall have a *fire resistance rating* of not less than 1 hour. Openings within such *exterior walls* shall be protected by opening protectives having a *fire protection rating* of not less than 3/4 hour. This construction shall extend vertically from the ground to a point 10 feet (3048 mm) above the floor level of the area for assisted rescue or to the roof line, whichever is lower.

Exception: Areas for assisted rescue that are located 10 feet (3048 mm) or more from the exterior face of a building are not required to be separated from the building by fire-resistance rated walls or protected openings.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

1018.1 Construction, corridors; 712.4 Continuity. (150310 Item B-3)

1018.1 Construction. *Corridors* shall be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Table 1018.1. The *corridor* walls required to be fire-resistance rated shall comply with Section 709 for *fire partitions*.

Exceptions:

- ~~1. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in a Group E occupancy where each room that is used for instruction has at least one door opening directly to the exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have at least one-half of the required means of egress doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this exception are required to be at ground level.~~
- ~~2. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors contained within a Group R dwelling or sleeping unit.~~
- ~~3. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in open parking garages.~~
- ~~4. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group B which is a space requiring only a single means of egress complying with Section 1015.1.~~

TABLE 1018.1 CORRIDOR FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING (footnotes a through e remain unchanged)

f. Exit access corridors are not required to be rated on any single tenant floor or in any single tenant ~~space if~~ **space if** 1-hour fire-resistance-rated tenant demising walls are provided between all tenants spaces and 1-hour fire-resistance-rated floor/ceiling assemblies are provided in multistory buildings and fire partitions are provided between other tenant spaces on the same floor. The structure supporting such floor/ceiling assemblies and fire partitions is not required to be rated in Types IIB, IIIB and VB construction.

g. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in a Group E occupancy **if** each room that is used for instruction has at least one door opening directly to the exterior and rooms for assembly purposes have at least one-half of the required means of egress doors opening directly to the exterior. Exterior doors specified in this exception are required to be at ground level.

h. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors contained within a Group R dwelling or sleeping unit.

i. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in open parking garages.

j. A fire-resistance rating is not required for corridors in an occupancy in Group B which is a space requiring only a single means of egress complying with Section 1015.1.

(Insert footnote references as required in the table. Footnote f for Group B, g for Group E, h for Group R, i for Group S, j for Group B)

712.4 Continuity. Assemblies shall be continuous without openings, penetrations or joints except as permitted by this section and **Sections** 708.2, 713.4, 714 and 1022.1. Skylights and other penetrations through a fire-resistant-rated roof deck or slab are permitted to be unprotected, provided that the structural integrity of the fire-resistant-rated roof assembly is maintained. Unprotected skylights shall not be permitted in roof assemblies required to be fire-resistance rated in accordance with Section 705.8.6. The supporting construction shall be protected to afford the required *fire-resistance rating* of the *horizontal assembly* supported.

Exceptions:

1. In buildings of Type IIB, IIIB, or VB construction, the construction supporting the horizontal assembly is not required to be fire-resistance-rated at the following:

~~1-1.1.~~ Horizontal assemblies at the separations of incidental uses as specified by Table 508.2.5, provided the required fire-resistance rating does not exceed 1 hour.

~~2-1.2.~~ Horizontal assemblies at the separation of dwelling units and sleeping units as required by Section 420.3.

~~3-1.3.~~ Horizontal assemblies as smoke barriers constructed in accordance with Section 710.

2. Horizontal assemblies constructed solely for the purpose of satisfying the requirements of footnote f of Table 1018.1.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

1008.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. (150310 Item B-18)

1008.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. Doors serving a Group H occupancy and doors serving rooms or spaces with an *occupant load* of 50 or more in a Group A or E occupancy shall not be provided with a latch or lock unless it is panic hardware or *fire exit hardware*.

Exception: A main *exit* of a Group A occupancy in compliance with Section 1008.1.9.3, Item 2.

Electrical rooms with equipment rated ~~4,200~~ 800 amperes or more and over 6 feet (1829 mm) wide that contain overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices with *exit* or *exit access* doors shall be equipped with panic hardware or *fire exit hardware*. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is **April 1, 2016**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Fire Code, Section 1008.1.10, Panic and fire exit hardware.]

2012 NC Building Code

1018.6 Corridor continuity. (130311 Item B-12)

1018.6 Corridor continuity. Fire-resistant-rated **corridors** shall be continuous from the point of entry to an exit, and shall not be interrupted by intervening rooms.

Exceptions:

1. Foyers, lobbies or reception rooms constructed as corridors shall not be constructed as intervening rooms.
2. A toilet room as defined by the NC Plumbing Code that meets all of the following requirements may be included as part of the rated corridor enclosure:
 - 2.1. The toilet room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by fire-resistant-rated construction meeting the same requirements as the corridor construction;
 - 2.2. No other rooms open off of the toilet room;
 - 2.3. No gas or electric appliances other than electric hand dryers are located in the toilet room; and
 - 2.4. The toilet room is not used for any other purpose.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Fire Code, Section 1018.6]

1109.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms. (151215 Item B-3)

1109.2.1 Family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms. In assembly and mercantile occupancies, an *accessible* family or assisted-use toilet room shall be provided where an aggregate of six or more male and female water closets is required. In buildings of mixed occupancy, only those water closets required for the assembly or mercantile occupancy shall be used to determine the family or assisted-use toilet room requirement. In recreational facilities where separate-sex bathing rooms are provided, an *accessible* family or assisted-use bathing room shall be provided. Fixtures located within family or assisted-use toilet and bathing rooms shall be included in determining the number of fixtures provided in an occupancy.

Exceptions:

1. Where each separate-sex bathing room has only one shower or bathtub fixture, a family or assisted-use bathing room is not required.

2. In an **assembly** occupancy that meets the definition of a nightclub in 902.1, the family or assisted-use toilet room is not required.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

1109.14 Recreational and sports facilities. (150310 Item B-4)

1109.14 Recreational and sports facilities. Recreational and sports facilities shall be provided with *accessible* features in accordance with Sections 1109.14.1 through 1109.14.4.

Exception: Swimming pools for single or multiple Group R-2 and Group R-3 occupancy buildings intended for use by residents only.

1109.14.1 Facilities serving a single building. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies where recreational facilities are provided serving a single building containing *Type A units* or *Type B units*, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility shall be *accessible*. Every recreational facility of each type on a site shall be considered to determine the total number of each type that is required to be *accessible*.

1109.14.2 Facilities serving multiple buildings. In Group R-2 and R-3 occupancies on a single *site* where multiple buildings containing *Type A units* or *Type B units* are served by recreational facilities, 25 percent, but not less than one, of each type of recreational facility serving each building shall be *accessible*. The total number of each type of recreational facility that is required to be *accessible* shall be determined by considering every recreational facility of each type serving each building on the site.

1109.14.3 Other occupancies. All recreational and sports facilities not falling within the purview of Section 1109.14.1 or 1109.14.2 shall be *accessible*.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14)

1109.14.3.1 Recreational boating facilities.

Revision to Table 1004.1.1

Add footnote to the table stating the following:

Reference Section 3606.8 for occupant load of piers and docks.

Addition to Chapter 11

1109.14.3.1 Recreational boating facilities. The minimum required number of accessible berths shall be provided as per Table 1109.14.3.1.

1109.14.3.1.1 Number of boat slips not identified. Where the number of boat slips is not identified, for example, along the edge of a long side-tie dock, each 40 feet of linear dock edge, or fraction thereof, shall be counted as one boat slip.

1109.14.3.1.2 Total number of boat slips. The total number of berths in a marina facility shall include all single berths, double berths, side-tie berths, end-tie berths, open berths and covered berths, as well as berths that are components of courtesy landings, visitor docks, fuel docks, sewage pumpout docks, harbor master office docks, haul out and repair docks, etc.

Table 1109.14.3.1
Minimum Required
Number of Accessible Berths

Total Number of Boat Slips	Minimum Number
1 to 25	1
26 to 50	2
51 to 100	3
101 to 150	4
151 to 300	5
301 to 400	6
401 to 500	7
501 to 600	8
601 to 700	9
701 to 800	10
810 to 900	11
901 to 1000	12
1001 and over	12, plus 1 for each 100 or fraction thereof over 1000

The effective date of this Rule is **January 1, 2016.**

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

1210.1 Floors. (110308 Item B-7)

1210.1 Floors. In other than dwelling units, toilet and bathing room floors shall have a smooth, hard, nonabsorbent surface that extends upward onto the walls at least ~~6 inches (152mm)~~ 3 inches (76mm).

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14)

1810.3.2.4.1 Preservative treatment.

Revision to Chapter 18

1810.3.2.4.1 Preservative treatment. Timber deep foundation elements used to support permanent structures shall be treated in accordance with this section unless it is established that the tops of the untreated timber elements will be below the lowest ground-water level assumed to exist during the life of the structure. Preservative and minimum final retention shall be in accordance with AWP A U1 (Commodity Specification E, Use Category 4C) for round timber elements and AWP A U1 (Commodity Specification A, Use Category 4B) for sawn timber elements. Preservative-treated timber elements shall be subject to a quality control program administered by an *approved agency*. Element cutoffs shall be treated in accordance with AWP A M4. For preservative treatment of piles in marine and underwater environments, see Chapter 36.

The effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Chapter 2, 602.4, 2302.1, 2303.1.4, Chapter 35 Cross-Laminated Timber. (141209 Item B-1)
2303.1.4 Structural glued cross-laminated timber.

(Add a definition in Chapter 2)

[BS] CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER. A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or structural composite lumber where the adjacent layers are cross oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

(Revise as follows)

602.4 Type IV. Type IV construction (Heavy Timber, HT) is that type of construction in which the exterior walls are of noncombustible materials and the interior building elements are of solid or laminated wood without concealed spaces. The details of Type IV construction shall comply with the provisions of this section and Section 2304.10. ~~Fire-retardant-treated wood framing~~ Exterior walls complying with Section 2303.2 602.4.1 or 602.4.2 shall be ~~permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less~~ permitted. Minimum solid-sawn nominal dimensions are required for structures built using Type IV construction (HT). For glued-laminated members, the equivalent net finished width and depths corresponding to the minimum nominal width and depths of solid-sawn lumber are required as specified in Table 602.4. Cross-laminated timber (CLT) dimensions used in this section are actual dimensions.

602.4.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood in exterior wall. Fire-retardant wood framing complying with Section 2303.2 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less.

602.4.2 Cross-laminated timber in exterior walls. Cross-laminated timber complying with Section 2303.1.4 shall be permitted within exterior wall assemblies with a 2-hour rating or less, provided the exterior surface of the cross-laminated timber is protected by one of the following:

1. Fire-retardant-treated wood sheathing complying with Section 2303.2 and not less than 15/32 inch (12 mm) thick;
2. Gypsum board not less than ½ inch (12.7 mm) thick; or
3. A noncombustible material

~~602.4.1~~ **602.4.3 Columns.** *(no change, only renumbering)*

~~602.4.2~~ **602.4.4 Floor framing.** *(no change, only renumbering)*

~~602.4.3~~ **602.4.5 Roof framing.** *(no change, only renumbering)*

~~602.4.4~~ **602.4.6 Floors.** *(no change, only renumbering)*

602.4.6.1 Cross-laminated timber floors. Cross-laminated timber shall be not less than 4 inches (102 mm) in thickness. Cross-laminated timber shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another. Cross-laminated timber shall be permitted to be connected to walls without a shrinkage gap providing swelling or shrinking is considered in the design. Corbelling of masonry walls under the floor shall be permitted to be used.

~~602.4.5~~ **602.4.7 Roofs.** Roofs shall be without concealed spaces and wood roof decks shall be sawn or glued-laminated, splined or tongue-and-groove plank, not less than 2 inches (51 mm) nominal in thickness; 1 1/8-inch-thick (32 mm) wood structural panel (exterior glue); or of planks not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in width, set on edge close together and laid as required for floors; or cross-laminated timber. Other types of decking shall be permitted to be used if providing equivalent fire resistance and structural properties.

Cross-laminated timber roofs shall be not less than 3 inches (76 mm) nominal in thickness and shall be continuous from support to support and mechanically fastened to one another.

~~602.4.6~~ **602.4.8 Partitions and walls.** Partitions and walls shall comply with Section 602.4.8.1 or 602.4.8.2.

602.4.8.1 Interior walls and partitions. Interior walls and Partitions partitions shall be of solid wood construction formed by not less than two layers of 1-inch (25 mm) matched boards or laminated construction 4 inches (102 mm) thick, or of 1-hour fire-resistance-rated construction.

602.4.8.2 Exterior walls. Exterior walls shall be one of the following:

1. Noncombustible materials

2. Not less than 6 inches (152 mm) in thickness and constructed of one of the following:

2.1 Fire-retardant-treated wood in accordance with Section 2303.2 and complying with Section 602.4.1.

2.2 Cross-laminated timber complying with Section 602.4.2.

602.4.7 602.4.9 Exterior structural members. *(no change, only renumbering)*

2302.1 Definitions.

(Insert as follows)

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER. A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or structural composite lumber where the adjacent layers are cross oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

(Revise as follows)

2303.1.4 Structural glued cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timbers shall be manufactured and identified in accordance with ANSI/APA PRG 320.

2303.1.4 2303.1.5 Wood structural panels. *(no change, only renumbering)*

(Renumber subsequent sections accordingly)

(Add to Chapter 35 under APA)

ANSI/APA PRG 320-2012 Standard for Performance-rated Cross Laminated Timber.....2303.1.4

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

Chapter 23 Wood Tables SP. (130910 Item B-2)

Change the following tables in Chapter 23 as indicated in the attachment:

2308.8.8(1), 2308.8(2), 2308.9.5, 2308.9.6, 2308.10.2(1), 2308.10.2(2),
2308.10.3(1), 2308.10.3(2), 2308.10.3(3), 2308.10.3(4), 2308.10.3(5), 2308.10.3(6)

http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Documents/2012_NCBuildingCode_amendments/130910%20B2%20Building%20Ch23%20Wood%20Tables%20SP1.pdf

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2902.1.1 Fixture calculations. (131210 Item B-2)

2902.1.1 Fixture calculations. To determine the *occupant load* of each sex, the total *occupant load* shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the *occupant load* of each sex in accordance with Table 2902.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 2902.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple occupancies, such fractional numbers for each occupancy shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

Exceptions:

1. The total *occupant load* shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved* statistical data indicate a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.
2. In buildings that contain dwellings or sleeping units that have a pool dedicated to the residents, a percentage reduction of the total required fixtures provided for a pool and pool deck without bleachers and grandstands may be taken equal to the percentage of total residential units whose entries fall within 500 feet of the pool deck.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

Chapter 34 Existing Structures. (140610 Item B-6)

3400 Existing structures

Delete Chapter 34, Existing Building And Structures, from the 2012 NC Building Code.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This information is in the 2015 NC Existing Building Code, Chapter 14]

3404.6 Means of egress capacity factors. (130910 Item B-6)

3404.6 Means of egress capacity factors. Alterations to any existing building or structure shall not be affected by the egress width factors in Section 1005.1 for new construction in determining the minimum egress widths or the minimum number of exits in an existing building or structure. The minimum egress widths for the components of the *means of egress* shall be based on the *means of egress* width factors in the building code under which the building was constructed, and shall be considered as complying *means of egress* for any *alteration* if, ~~in the opinion of the building official,~~ they do not constitute a distinct hazard to life.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

3411.8.3.1 Inclined stairway chairlifts. (110308 Item B-2)

3411.8.3 Platform lifts. Platform (wheelchair) lifts complying with ICC A117.1 and installed in accordance with ASME A18.1 shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route.

3411.8.3.1 Inclined stairway chairlifts. Inclined stairway chairlifts that do not reduce the required means of egress and installed in accordance with ASME A18.1 shall be permitted as a component of an accessible route in alterations of existing occupancies in:

1. Religious organizations or entities controlled by religious organizations, including places of worship; or
2. Private clubs or establishments exempted under Title II of the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

Such inclined stairway chairlifts shall be approved for commercial use by the manufacturer and installed by factory trained and approved installers.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Building Code

Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14)
3500 Referenced standards.

Additions to Chapter 35

AASHTO M288-06 Geotextile Specification for Highway Applications

ACI 350-06 Code Requirements for Environmental Engineering Concrete Structures

ACI 440.2R-08 Guide to the Design and Construction of Externally Bonded FRP Systems for Strengthening Concrete Structures

ACI 440.3R-12 Guide Test Methods for Fiber Reinforced Polymer (FRP) Composites for Reinforcing or Strengthening Concrete and Masonry Structures

ASTM C581-03 Standard Practice for Determining Chemical Resistance of Thermosetting Resins Used in Glass-Fiber-Reinforced Structures Intended for Liquid Service

ASTM C666-03 Standard Test Method for Resistance of Concrete to Rapid Freezing and Thawing

ASTM D256-10 Test Methods for Determining the Izod Pendulum Impact Resistance of Plastics

ASTM D570-98 Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics

ASTM D578-05 Standard Specification for Glass Fiber Strands

ASTM D618-13 Practice for Conditioning Plastics for Testing

ASTM D638-10 Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics

ASTM D648-07 Test Method for Deflection Temperature of Plastics Under Flexural Load in the Edgewise Position

ASTM D696-08 Test Method for Coefficient of Linear Thermal Expansion of Plastics between -30°C and 30°C with a Vitreous Silica Dilatometer

ASTM D790-10 Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials

ASTM D883-12 Terminology Relating to Plastics

ASTM D907-12a Standard Terminology of Adhesives

ASTM D953-10 Standard Test Method for Bearing Strength of Plastics

ASTM D1435-13 Practice for Outdoor Weathering of Plastics

ASTM D2343-09 Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Glass Fiber Strands, Yarns, and Rovings Used in Reinforced Plastics

ASTM D2344-13 Standard Test Method for Short Beam Strength of Polymer Matrix Composite Materials and Their Laminates

ASTM D2583-13a Standard Test Method for Indentation Hardness of Rigid Plastics by Means of a Barcol Impressor

ASTM D3878-07 Standard Terminology of High-modulus Reinforcing Fibers and Their Composites

ASTM D3917-12 Standard Specification for Dimensional Tolerance of Thermosetting Glass-reinforced Plastic Pultruded Shapes

ASTM D4065-12 Standard Practice for Plastics: Dynamic Mechanical Properties: Determination and Report of Procedures

ASTM D4385-13 Standard Practice for Classifying Visual Defects in Thermosetting Reinforced Plastic Pultruded Products

ASTM D4216-13 Standard Test Methods for Impact Resistance of Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) Building Products

ASTM D4226-11 Standard Specification for Rigid Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (PVC) and Related PVC and Chlorinated Poly(Vinyl Chloride) (CPVC) Building Products Compounds

ASTM D5379-12 Standard Test Method for Shear Properties of Composite Materials by the V-Notch Beam Method

ASTM D6641-09 Standard Test Method for Determining the Compressive Properties of Polymer Matrix Composite Laminates Using a Combined Loading Compression (CLC) Test Fixture

ASTM D7136-12 Standard Test Method for Measuring the Damage Resistance of a Fiber-reinforced Polymer Matrix Composite to a Drop-weight Impact Event

ASTM D7290-06 Standard Practice for Evaluating Material Property Characteristic Values for Polymeric Composites for Civil Engineering Applications

ASTM D7332-09 Standard Test Method for Measuring the Fastener Pull-through Resistance of a Fiber-reinforced Matrix Composite

ASTM G154-12a Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Light Apparatus for UV Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

The effective date of this Rule is **January 1, 2016**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Replacement of Chapter 36

(Note: The following is to be considered underlined in its entirety.)

Commentary is included for clarification only and not subject to review.

CHAPTER 36 DOCKS, PIERS, BULKHEADS AND WATERWAY STRUCTURES

SECTION 3601 GENERAL AND SCOPE

3601.1 General. The intent of this chapter is to provide minimum standards for the design, construction and maintenance of *docks, piers, bulkheads*, and waterway structures. The guidelines in this chapter address minimum standards for foundations, design forces, structural integrity, material selection and utilization and construction techniques.

Commentary: The design of docks, piers, bulkheads and waterway structures is essential for the protection of life and property without causing adverse effects to the shoreline. These structures by their very nature result in some modification of physical environment and therefore require minimum design standards.

3601.2 Scope. The following structures shall be designed in accordance with the requirements of this chapter:

1. *Docks, piers, gangways, and catwalks*, other than residential and farm *docks* and *piers* exempted from this chapter in the exceptions below, shall be designed by a registered design professional.
2. All *bulkheads* having an exposed height greater than 5 feet or with a superimposed load shall be designed by a registered design professional and require special inspection. Special inspection shall be waived for *bulkheads* of any height constructed from property line to property line of **one- or two- family** dwellings and including attachment to neighboring *bulkheads*.

Commentary: Chapters 17 and 18 require special inspection on retaining walls exceeding 5 feet in height due to failures associated with construction related deficiencies. Bulkheads are also prone to the same sort of construction deficiencies; therefore, special inspection is required for bulkheads greater than 5 feet, including common bulkheads for multi-family residential projects or subdivisions where the bulkhead services multiple single family residences. The exception is a bulkhead servicing the property of one single family residence.

3. Oceanfront retaining walls, *bulkheads* and other types of retaining walls used by the public on the coastline of the ocean or adjacent inlets shall be designed by a registered design professional.
4. Marine terminal or port facilities for berthing, mooring, docking and servicing ships, barges, or tug boats that handle cargo of all types, including bulks, containers, liquids, fuels, and people, which shall be designed by a registered design professional in accordance with accepted industry standards.

Commentary: Wharves and piers for cargo handling facilities typically require consideration of loadings unique to each individual facility. As a result, these facilities must be designed by a registered design professional who works with the owner in the preliminary phases of the project to develop design criteria tailored to the owner's needs. Support structures, such as warehouses, office buildings, and cranes supported on these structures, are required to comply with the provisions of this code. For more information on cargo wharves and docks, the reader is referred to the Department of Defense UFC 4-152-01 Design: Piers and Wharves, UFC 4-152-07 Design: Small Craft Berthing Facilities, and the Port of Long Beach Wharf Design Criteria.

5. Groins not exempted below, jetties, breakwaters, oceanfront seawalls, and oceanfront **revetments shall** be designed by a registered design professional in accordance with accepted industry standards.

Commentary: These structures typically require consideration of loadings unique to each individual facility. As a result, these structures must be designed by a registered design professional who works with the owner in the preliminary phases of the project to develop design criteria tailored to the owner's needs. For more information, refer to documents such as The Coastal Engineering Manual by the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers.

Exceptions: The following structures are exempt from the requirements of this chapter:

1. Sill structures combined with marsh plantings and certain groins in accordance with the Department of Environmental and Natural Resources general permit requirements.
2. Oceanfront and inlet sandbag revetments in accordance with the Department of Environmental and Natural Resources general permit requirements.
3. Revetments constructed on single family residential property having a height no greater than 10 feet and slope greater than 1.5 horizontal: 1.0 vertical and in accordance with the Department of Environmental and Natural Resources general permit requirements.
4. Farm structures not on public waters.

Commentary: Farm structures should be limited solely for use by the farmer, his family, and his employees.

5. *Piers and docks* associated with **one- or two- family** dwellings meeting the exceptions of the *NC Residential Code*.

SECTION 3602 DEFINITIONS

ADDITIVES. Substances added to a polymer resin or vinyl chloride material to aid in processing the material.

BOAT SLIP. A berthing place for one or two watercraft where the watercraft can be securely moored to cleats, piling, or other devices while the boats are in the water. Boat slips are commonly configured as “side-ties” or as single or double loaded “U” shaped berths.

BULKHEAD. A vertical wall structure designed to retain shoreline material and prevent erosion due to wave activity.

CATWALK. A narrow footway platform extending alongside a structure.

DESIGN WAVE. A design wave that is potentially most damaging to an economically feasible structure, or wave for which a structure is designed.

DOCK. A structure extending alongshore or out from the shore into a body of water, usually accommodating multiple boat slips, to which boats may be moored in order to load or unload people or cargo.

EXTRUSION. Manufacturing process whereby a material is pushed through a die to form a shape of constant cross section. Vinyl Chloride sheet piling is generally manufactured using an extrusion process.

FETCH. Open water exposure over which waves are generated.

FIBER. One or more glass, carbon, or aramid filaments in the form of a continuous strand or roving in an *FRP* material.

FIBER ARCHITECTURE. Construction of a composite material from layers with different types and orientations of fibrous material.

FIBER ORIENTATION. Fiber orientation is the alignment of the longitudinal axis of a fiber in an *FRP* material with respect to the stated reference axis.

FIBER REINFORCED POLYMER (*FRP*). A composite material which consists of a polymer resin based matrix reinforced with fibers of glass, carbon, aramid, or hybrid combinations of these fiber types.

FIBER VOLUME FRACTION. The volume of reinforcement fiber in a cured composite divided by the volume of the composite section.

FILLER. Substance added to the matrix of a *FRP* material intended to alter its engineering properties, performance, or cost.

GANGWAY. A footway bridge extending from the *dock, pier, bulkhead,* or shore, usually to a floating structure.

GLASS TRANSITION TEMPERATURE (T_g). Temperature at which the polymer matrix of an *FRP* material changes from a glassy state to a rubbery state.

KING PILE. The primary structural member that supports horizontal panels to form a vertical wall sometimes used in *bulkhead* or groin construction.

LAMINA. A layer of fibers and resin in an *FRP* material.

MATERIAL LONGITUDINAL DIRECTION. Direction in an *FRP* material parallel to the direction of pultrusion (pulling) during the manufacture of a plate or structural shape.

MATERIAL TRANSVERSE DIRECTION. Direction in an *FRP* material orthogonal to the longitudinal direction.

MATRIX. Continuous constituent of an *FRP* material surrounding the reinforcing fibers and consisting of a polymer resin with any fillers and additives.

PIER. An elevated deck structure, usually pile supported, extending out into the water from the shore.

PILE. A timber, concrete, metal, or composite member embedded into the ground to support or brace a structure. "Piles" or "piling" are plural forms of "pile."

PRIVATE WATERFRONT STRUCTURES. A *dock, pier, bulkhead,* or associated structure not open to the general public and with no more than ten total boat slips and no more than ten owners.

PUBLIC WATERFRONT STRUCTURES. A *dock, pier, bulkhead,* or associated structure located on *multi-family* residential property (greater than ten *dwelling units*), public property or commercial property.

PULTRUSION. Manufacturing process whereby a material is pulled through a die to form a shape of constant cross section. *FRP* plates and structural shapes are generally manufactured using a pultrusion process.

RESIN. An organic polymer possessing indefinite and often high molecular weight and a softening or melting range that exhibits a tendency to flow when subjected to stress.

REVETMENT. A sloping structure usually constructed of stone or concrete and placed on a shoreline to protect it against erosion by wave and current action.

ROVING. In an *FRP* material, a roving is a large number of continuous parallel filaments or a group of untwisted parallel strands.

SHEET PILE. A pile with a generally slender flat cross section to be embedded into the ground or seabed and meshed or interlocked with like members to form a diaphragm, wall, or *bulkhead*.

SYMMETRIC COMPOSITE. A symmetric composite is a composite material in which the sequence of lamina below the laminate mid-plane is a mirror image to those above the laminate mid-plane.

SECTION 3603 PERMITS AND APPROVALS

3603.1 General. In addition to a building permit, permits may be required from federal, state, or county agencies such as the United States Army Corps of Engineers or the North Carolina Department of Environmental and Natural Resources. In cases of structures to be built on lakes operated by an electric utility for the generation of power, a permit from the operating utility may also be required.

SECTION 3604 MINIMUM DESIGN LOADS

3604.1 General. Every structure shall be of sufficient strength to support the imposed dead, live, snow, wind, impact, and seismic loads without exceeding the prescribed stresses for the various materials described elsewhere in this code. Adequate consideration shall be made for forces imposed by earth, water, docking, and mooring.

3604.2 Dead loads. The weight of the component parts of a structure shall be used in the design when it will influence the strength of the structural elements. All utilities, permanent furniture, dock boxes, and mooring hardware should be considered as dead load.

3604.3 Live loads. Design live loads shall be the greatest load that will likely be imposed on the structure, including superimposed loads on retained material that exert horizontal loads on the structure. Where vehicles are allowed, actual weight of vehicles and wheel loads as specified in the latest edition of Standard Specifications for Highway Bridges of the American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials or obtained from the vehicle manufacturer shall be used. The design load shall be posted at the *dock* or *pier* approach where vehicles are allowed. Minimum live loads are:

1. Fixed *piers*, *docks*, *catwalks* - Private waterfront *piers*: 40 psf or 300 pounds concentrated load on any area 2 foot square. Public waterfront *piers*: Design loads shall be the greatest combinations of loads exerted on the structure but not less than 60 psf.
2. Floating *docks* - Private waterfront *docks*: 20 psf, public waterfront *docks*: 30 psf, or 300 pounds concentrated load on any area 2 feet square. Under dead and live load, all floating *docks* shall have a minimum of 3 inches freeboard from the top of the flotation device, other than low freeboard watercraft (e.g. kayak) launching facilities. All floating *docks* subject to this chapter shall have not more than 5 degrees tilt from the horizontal under uniform live loading on one-half of the dock width or under concentrated load of 400 pounds applied within 12 inches of any side.
3. *Gangways* - *Gangways* shall be designed for a live load of for 100 psf. Flotation for *gangway* landing shall be designed for 50 psf, live load.
4. *Bulkheads*, *revetments* - Design loads shall be the greatest combinations of loads exerted on the structure. Consideration shall be given to horizontal loads exerted by superimposed loads on the retained earth and by inclined

surface slopes. Superimposed loads shall be considered when exceeding 50 psf and located within a horizontal distance of three times the height of the *bulkhead* from the face of the *bulkhead*.

3604.4 Snow Loads. Design snow loads shall be as prescribed in Chapter 16.

3604.5 Wind loads. Design wind loads shall be as prescribed in Chapter 16 without moored vessels. In wind regions with a design wind speed greater than 90 mph, the design wind speed shall be no less than 90 mph (3 second gust). This gust wind speed shall be adjusted for duration and height (not restricted to 15 feet minimum) for wind pressures applied to vessels moored at the facility in accordance with Chapter 16.

Commentary: During hurricanes, the intent is that vessels be removed from the water or sailed out to sea away from the storm, hence the reduced design wind speed for moored vessels. A design wind speed of 90 mph (3 second gust) is consistent with a thunderstorm.

3604.6 Impact loads. Design impact loads shall be as prescribed in Chapter 16 but not less than 1.25 times the kinetic energy exerted by a striking vessel or vehicle.

3604.7 Seismic Loads. Design seismic loads shall be as prescribed in Chapter 16. Seismic loads are not applicable for any structure exempted from design by a registered design professional.

3604.8 Water loads. Hydrostatic and hydrodynamic loadings shall be considered as follows:

3604.8.1 Hydrostatic Pressures. Hydrostatic pressures shall be considered in conjunction with the equivalent fluid pressure of soil and any surcharge acting on the structure. For *bulkheads*, hydrostatic pressures shall be estimated based on maximum difference between retained and offshore water surface elevations.

3604.8.2 Current Loads. Current loads for structures and vessels shall be determined from records on current velocity using accepted engineering practice.

3604.8.3 Anchorage for Uplift. Sufficient anchorage against uplift between all components, except elements specifically designed to break away, shall be provided. Resisting forces shall be not less than 1.5 times the applied uplift force.

3604.8.4 Wave Forces. Wave forces shall be determined from wave records where available. Where no wave records are available, the design wave shall be determined from probable wind speed, direction, fetch, and water depth that will yield a critical wave. Forces shall then be calculated using accepted engineering practice.

3604.8.5 Forces due to Passing Vessels. All *piers* and floating *docks* shall be designed for water loading generated by wind and passing vessels. Adjacent to federal designated channels, water loading shall be based on commercial and recreational vessels with minimum passing speeds of 10 and 20 knots, respectively.

3604.9 Earth loads. Lateral earth pressures shall be determined by considering the specific soil properties and applying earth pressure theories generally accepted for soil mechanics in engineering practice. A geotechnical investigation or other adequate consideration shall be given by the registered design professional for the effect of probable varying levels of retained water, tide, and flood water. Pressures exerted by the earth shall be checked for dry, moist, and saturated conditions as applicable.

3604.10 Erosion. The effects of reasonably predictable erosion, propeller wash-induced scour, and wave-induced scour shall be given ample consideration.

3604.11 Water Levels. The ability to accommodate dead, live, wind, current, and wave loadings for the range of water levels (from low water to base flood level) anticipated at the site shall be given consideration. For public and private

floating docks, guide piling systems shall be capable of accommodating water levels extending a minimum of 2 feet above base flood elevation plus the freeboard of the dock structure.

SECTION 3605 MATERIALS

3605.1 General. The quality of materials and fasteners used for load-supporting purposes shall conform to *acceptable engineering practice*.

Commentary: Marine environments are quite hostile to many materials. Fresh water facilitates corrosion of metals, and salt water further accelerates corrosion. While conventional concrete cover affords some protection to reinforcing steel, wet service in all marine environments and chloride penetration in salt water environments can break down the passive protection afforded by concrete cover. Wood is subject to attack by decay, insects, and, in salt water, by marine borers. Due to the hostile environments in marine applications, durability of materials is as important a consideration in the selection of materials as strength.

3605.2 Piling and Foundations. Materials used for piling and repairing piling shall comply with applicable provisions of Chapter 18 and the material requirements of Sections 3605.3 through 3605.7.

3605.2.1 Helical Anchors. Helical anchors shall be hot dip galvanized. A representative number of helical anchors subjected to tensile loading shall be load tested in accordance with ASTM D 3689 to two times their design load capacity. Load testing of anchors in tension shall include creep testing of a representative number of the anchors. Helical anchors shall be designed and installed as determined by a registered design professional.

Commentary: The design should consider the risk of varying soils at the site with specific concern for deposits of marine clays susceptible to creep. In sedimentary regions and areas created with fill from dredged deposits, pockets of such clays can exist and lack of long term testing at that specific location could result in creep of the anchor.

3605.3 Wood. Wood shall be pressure treated with a preservative recommended by the American Wood Preservers' Association for the specific application. Wood species, preservative treatment, minimum lumber size, and lumber grade shall be in accordance with Table 3605.3. Handrails, guardrails, wallcaps, and decking may be constructed of naturally durable species where located above the normal high water mark.

3605.3.1 Wood Connections. All steel bolts, rods, and other hardware shall be hot-dipped galvanized or protected with an equivalent system. All bolts, rods and other metal materials shall be no smaller than 5/8 inch in diameter. Beams, girders, or pile caps shall be attached to the piling with a minimum of two 5/8-inch hot-dip galvanized steel bolts per beam member through bolted at each piling connection. Piling shall not be notched so that the cross-section is reduced below 50 percent. Threaded fasteners shall not be tightened directly against wood surfaces but used only in conjunction with standard ogee or flat washers. Cold formed metal connectors shall not be used in wet applications or applications subject to wetting and drying cycles. Mooring hardware, including cleats, and pile guides shall be through bolted using sizes recommended by the manufacturer.

Table 3605.3: SPECIFICATIONS FOR SOUTHERN PINE² LUMBER IN FRESH AND SALT WATER SERVICE

Location	Component	AWPA Use Category ^{1,4}		Dimensions	Lumber Grade		Moisture Content at Treatment
		Saltwater	Freshwater		Saltwater	Freshwater	
Above Normal High Water	Decking ³	3B	3B	⁵ / ₄ “ 2” Nominal Min.	Premium No. 2	Premium No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
	Guardrails	3B	3B	2” Nominal Min.	No. 2	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
	Wallcaps	3B	3B	2” Nominal Min.	No. 2	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
	Walers	3B	3B	4x6 Nominal	No. 2	No. 2	KD 20% or less or Dry 23%
	Cross Bracing	3B	3B	2” to 4” Nominal	No. 2	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
Splash Zone	Split Pile Caps	4B	4B	2” to 4” Nominal	No. 2	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
	Stringers	4B	4B	2” Nominal	No. 2	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
Below Normal High Water	Sheet Piles	5B	4C	2” to 4” Nominal	Marine No. 1 ⁷	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
	Walers	5B	4C	4x6 Nominal	Marine No. 1 ⁷	No. 2	KD 20% or less or Dry 23%
	Cross Bracing	5B	4C	2” to 4” Nominal	Marine No. 1 ⁷	No. 2	Surfaced Dry 19%
	Rectangular Timber Piles	Not Allowed ⁶	4C	6x6 Nominal	Not Allowed ⁶	No. 2	KD 20% or less or Dry 23%
	Round Timber Piles	5B ⁶	4C	ASTM D25	ASTM D25	ASTM D25	KD 25% or Less
Engineered Lumber	Glulam Timber	5B	4B	4” Nominal Min.	Note 5	Note 5	12% Average
	Parallel Strand Lumber	5B	4B	3½” Minimum 61	1.8E or Better	1.8E or Better	Per Manufacturer’s Specifications

Footnotes:

1. Lumber shall be pressure treated with preservative treatment in accordance with AWP A U1.
2. At the discretion of the Building Official, lumber species other than Southern Pine may be approved when span tables for wet use conditions are submitted, and the lumber is treated for comparable service life to the treatment specifications required by Table 3605.1.
3. Wood composite decking, treated or untreated, shall provide equivalent service life to the treated decking specified in Table 3605.1.
4. All notches, holes, and field cuts shall be field treated in accordance with AWP A M4.
5. Glulam grade shall be specified as a layup combination or stress class in accordance with the National Design Specification or the manufacturer's published data. Layup combinations shall consist of species and grades capable of the treatment retentions equivalent to the AWP A use categories specified in Table 3605.1.
6. Commercial pile wraps may be used to extend the life expectancy of timber piles exposed to marine borers.
7. AWP A requirements for Marine No. 1 specify that no heartwood be exposed on any face prior to preservative treatment.

Commentary: Table 3605.3 specifies the minimum lumber grades and preservative pressure treatment required for Southern Pine lumber to survive in various marine environments providing a reasonable service life. Southern Pine is the most prevalent species treated in North Carolina. Other species are acceptable when treated in accordance with appropriate AWP A standards and designed accounting for wet use. Treatment is specified in accordance with the use condition categories set forth in AWP A U1. Fresh water applications and salt water applications above normal high water require protection from decay and insects. Salt water applications below normal high water require additional protection from marine borers, teredoes and limnoria. In treating wood against marine borers sapwood is required on exposed faces of the pile. For round piles it is reasonably easy to procure a wood member with no heartwood exposed; however, for square or rectangular piles it is much more expensive to saw the pile in a manner that leaves no heartwood exposed on any face of the pile.

3605.4 Concrete. Concrete components shall comply with applicable provisions of Chapter 19 and ACI 318. Minimum concrete strength, air entrainment, maximum chloride content, and maximum water cement ratio shall be determined from ACI 318 on the basis of required structural strength, required resistance to freeze-thaw exposure, required abrasion resistance, and required resistance to water penetration and salt water intrusion. Minimum concrete cover shall be increased and reinforcing steel spacing shall be decreased in accordance with ACI 350, to reduce crack size. All steel embedments, other than reinforcing steel, shall be stainless, hot dip galvanized, or coated for corrosion protection. Field welds and abrasions of coatings on embeds shall be touch coated in the field.

Commentary: In marine environments durability requirements dictate material selection and concrete mix designs. ACI 318 specifies maximum water cement ratios for concrete mixes to limit permeability of the concrete. Concrete strength specified by the designer should be consistent with the water cement ratio required. Higher concrete strengths than needed for strength considerations may be required to achieve the required water cement ratio. Controlling cracking of the concrete limits potential pathways of water and chloride ions to the reinforcing steel, thereby reducing corrosion potential.

3605.5 Structural Steel. Steel components shall comply with applicable provisions of Chapter 22 and AISC 360. All structural steel members, fasteners, and fittings shall be protected from corrosion by coating or cathodic protection for the specific exposure. Steel *bulkhead* components and dock components shall be hot dip galvanized or coated to achieve the corrosion protection required for the degree of exposure of corrosive elements. Field welds and abrasions to coatings shall be touch coated after erection or installation is completed. Cold formed metal joists, girders, columns, and studs shall not be used in applications where the members are constantly wet or subject to wetting and drying cycles.

Commentary: Cold formed metal structural members have very little reserve capacity when subjected to a corrosive environment.

3605.6 Aluminum. Aluminum *bulkhead* sheets or aluminum *bulkhead* or *dock* components shall be of proper alloy to resist corrosive elements in the adjacent water and soil. *Bulkhead* components and hardware shall be aluminum or stainless steel. Aluminum shall be galvanically and physically isolated from concrete and galvanically isolated from steel. Connection hardware and fasteners for aluminum components may be stainless steel or galvanized steel if isolated from aluminum structural elements.

Commentary: Aluminum in contact with concrete may react with the concrete producing deleterious effects on the concrete. Aluminum in direct contact with steel precipitates a galvanic reaction resulting in accelerated corrosion of the steel.

3605.7 Plastics and Composites. *Bulkheads*, structural shapes, plates, and guardrail systems manufactured from vinyl chloride based materials or fiber reinforced polymer (*FRP*) materials shall be designed to comply with manufacturer's published load tables or manufacturer's published mechanical properties subject to the requirements for specific materials in Sections 3605.7.1, 3605.7.2, and 3605.7.3. Plastic and composite members shall contain additives to inhibit ultra violet radiation degradation or shall be protected from ultra violet radiation by an **approved** coating.

3605.7.1 Sheet Piling Manufactured from Vinyl Chloride Based Materials. Vinyl chloride materials for sheet piling shall be specified and tested for conformance in accordance with ASTM D4216, including weathering tests in accordance with ASTM D1435. Mechanical properties shall be established in accordance with the tests specified in Table 3605.7.1. Design values of the tabulated properties shall conform to the limiting values specified in the table. The manufacturer of the sheet piling shall produce a certificate of analysis from a third party testing agency

certifying the vinyl chloride material from which the sheet piling is manufactured conforms to the physical properties specified. The third party testing agency shall be accredited in accordance with ISO 17025 to conduct the specified tests. Testing programs shall address changes in material sources and composition over time, and test data shall accurately represent the properties of the product produced at any given time.

Commentary: Language of 3605.7.1 and its subsections is based on a 2005 Army Corps of Engineers document entitled "INTERIM REPORT, General Design Guide: PVC Sheet Pile." This document appears to be the most current available on the topic.

The report explains specification of materials using the cell method of categorizing mechanical properties and conformance testing in accordance with ASTM D4216.

According to the report, manufacturers of PVC sheet piling use primarily recycled materials. Variability of recycled materials affects mechanical properties and durability of the product. For this reason, ongoing testing of the materials used in manufacturing the sheet piling by a qualified third party testing agency is of the utmost importance.

3605.7.1.1 Deflection of Vinyl Chloride Based Sheet Piling. Deflection of vinyl sheet pile *bulkheads* shall not exceed the lesser of 1/60 times the height from the mud line to the top of the wall or 2 inches. Effects of in-service temperatures exceeding 80°F on modulus of elasticity shall be considered in deflection calculations and selection of materials.

Commentary: Vinyl chloride based materials have a very low modulus of elasticity. Consequently, large deflections can occur in bulkheads that normally would have sufficient strength to withstand applied loads. Large deflections affect both stability of the bulkhead, especially in the presence of transient superimposed loads, and appearance. Therefore, deflections need to be limited. The elastic modulus of vinyl chloride based materials decreases at a rate of approximately 202 psi/°F with increase in temperature. Consequently, high summertime temperatures and resulting increased surface temperatures can significantly affect deflection of the bulkhead.

3605.7.1.2 Service Stresses for Vinyl Chloride Based Sheet Piling. Service load stresses in the vinyl sheet piling shall not exceed 3200 psi.

Commentary: Regardless of design method, ASD or LRFD, the USACE report recommends limiting service load stresses to 3200 psi in order to limit creep deformations.

3605.7.1.3 Ultra Violet Light Stabilization. Vinyl chloride based materials shall be compounded with stabilizing agents. Addition of stabilizers during the extrusion process is prohibited.

Commentary: Adding stabilizers during the extrusion process does not adequately stabilize the material against UV deterioration. Stabilizer must be added when the product is compounded.

3605.7.1.4 Impact Resistance of Vinyl Materials. Vinyl sheet pile *bulkheads* shall have sufficient impact resistance, determined in accordance with ASTM D256 and ASTM D4226, to resist impact from vessels traveling at mooring speeds, resist wave impact when installed in high velocity flood zones (V-Zones on Flood Insurance Rate Maps), and to resist impact from debris likely to collide with the *bulkhead* at flood stage or in areas subject to storm surge.

3605.7.1.5 Fire, Smoke, and Toxicity. Vinyl materials shall be tested for the in-service thickness in accordance with ASTM D635 with a resulting burning rate of 2 ½ inches per minute or less.

**Table 3605.7.1: LIMITATIONS ON MECHANICAL PROPERTIES
FOR VINYL CHLORIDE BASED SHEET PILING**

Mechanical Property	Test Protocol	Limitations on Property
Notch Impact Resistance	ASTM D256	2.0 ft-lb./in minimum
Drop Dart Impact Resistance, Procedure A	ASTM D4226	1.0 in-lb./mil minimum
Drop Dart Impact Resistance, Procedure B	ASTM D4226	2.0 in-lb./mil minimum
Tensile Strength	ASTM D638	6500 psi minimum
Modulus of Elasticity in Tension	ASTM D638	377,000 psi minimum
Deflection Temperature under 264 psi	ASTM D648	158 psi minimum
Linear Coefficient of Expansion	ASTM D696	4.4×10^{-5} in/in/ ⁰ F maximum

3605.7.2 Pultruded Fiber Reinforced Polymer (FRP) Sheet Piling, Shapes and Plates. Mechanical properties for FRP structural components shall be established in accordance with the tests specified in Table 3605.7.2. Each manufacturer shall publish the characteristic values for the product in accordance with ASTM D7290. The manufacturer of the FRP shall produce a certificate of analysis certifying the FRP material and constituent materials from which the FRP components are manufactured conform to the physical properties specified. Testing programs shall address changes in material sources and composition over time, and test data shall accurately represent the properties of the product produced at any given time. Manufactured components shall be inspected in the plant in accordance with ASTM D3917 for dimensional tolerances and according to ASTM D4385 for visual defects. Inspection reports shall be provided.

Commentary: Section 3605.7.2 is based on the ASCE "Prestandard for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Pultruded Fiber Reinforced Polymer Structures." This document has not yet been published as a national standard. Excerpts from the ASCE document necessary to establish consistent material behavior have been reproduced in this code. Methods for proportioning members are left to the designer with reference to manufacturer's published data.

Table 3605.7.2: LIMITATIONS ON PHYSICAL AND MECHANICAL PROPERTIES FOR FIBER REINFORCED POLYMER COMPONENTS¹

Property	ASTM Test Method	Minimum Number of Tests
Barcol Hardness	D2583	5
Glass Transition Temperature T _g	D4065	5
Coefficient of Thermal Expansion	D696	5
Moisture Equilibrium Content	D570	5
Longitudinal Tensile Strength	D638	10
Transverse Tensile Strength	D638	10
Longitudinal Tensile Modulus	D638	10
Transverse Tensile Modulus	D638	10
Longitudinal Compressive Strength	D6641	10
Transverse Compressive Strength	D6641	10
Longitudinal Compressive Modulus	D6641	10
Transverse Compressive Modulus	D6641	10
Longitudinal Flexural Strength	D790	10
Transverse Flexural Strength	D790	10
Longitudinal Flexural Modulus	D790	10
Transverse Flexural Modulus	D790	10

In-Plane Shear Strength	D5379	10
In-Plane Shear Modulus	D5379	10
Inter-laminar Shear Strength	D2344	10
Longitudinal Pin Bearing Strength	D953 ²	10
Transverse Pin Bearing Strength	D953 ²	10
Pull Through Strength per Fastener $t = \frac{3}{8}$ " $t = \frac{1}{2}$ " $t = \frac{3}{4}$ "	D7332, Proc. B	10

Footnotes:

1. Property requirements for shapes apply to sheet piles.
2. Tests shall be conducted for material thicknesses, t, tabulated and bolt sizes from 3/8 inch to 1 inch in diameter. No more than 1/3 of the bolt shank within the thickness of the connection material may be threaded. Bolts shall be installed snug tight.

3605.7.2.1 Maximum Service Temperature. Service temperature of *FRP* structural components shall not exceed $T_g - 40^\circ\text{F}$, where T_g is the glass transition temperature determined in accordance with ASTM D4065.

3605.7.2.2 *FRP* Constituent Materials. Fibers and matrix constituents shall comply with the following requirements:

3605.7.2.2.1 Fiber Type. Fibers shall be glass, carbon, aramid, or hybrid combinations of these fiber types. Glass fibers shall conform to ASTM D578.

3605.7.2.2.2 Fiber Architecture and Content. The fiber architecture of any pultruded element comprising the cross section of a pultruded *FRP* structural member shall be symmetrical and balanced. Each pultruded *FRP* structural element shall contain a minimum total fiber volume fraction of 30%.

3605.7.2.2.3 Fiber Orientations. Each element of a pultruded *FRP* structural member shall have fibers oriented in a minimum of two directions separated by a minimum of 30 degrees. In the direction of the longitudinal axis of the member the percentage of continuous fiber in each pultruded element shall be a minimum of 30% of the total fiber reinforcement by volume for shapes and a minimum of 25% of the total fiber reinforcement by volume for plates. When multiple elements share a common edge in the direction of pultrusion, at least 50% of the non-roving reinforcement in the element having the largest percentage of non-roving reinforcement shall extend through the junction connecting the elements.

3605.7.2.2.4 Minimum Fiber Tensile Strength. Determined in accordance with ASTM D7290, the characteristic value of the tensile strength of the fiber strands, yarns, and rovings shall be at least 290,000 psi. Tensile tests shall be conducted in accordance with ASTM D2343.

3605.7.2.2.5 Resin. A commercial grade thermoset resin shall be used for fabricating pultruded *FRP* structural members.

3605.7.2.2.6 Other Constituent Materials. Additives to the resin system that influence processing or curing, such as fillers, promoter, accelerators, inhibitors, UV resistant agent, and pigments shall be compatible with the fiber and resin system.

3605.7.2.3 Durability and Environmental Effects. Materials for *FRP* structural components shall be selected, designed, and manufactured to tolerate long term environmental effects anticipated during the service life of the structure.

3605.7.2.3.1 Factors Considered in Material Selection. The following factors shall be considered in selecting *FRP* materials for marine structures:

- a. Performance criteria for the structure;
- b. Intended service life of the structure;
- c. Expected environmental conditions, including likelihood of exposure to alkalis or organic solvents;
- d. Protective measures; and
- e. Feasibility of maintenance and repair during service.

3605.7.2.3.2 Adjustment of Material Properties to Account for Environmental Effects. Unless the glass transition temperature determined in accordance with ASTM D4065 and the tensile strength of the composite in the longitudinal and transverse directions determined in accordance with ASTM D638 can be shown to retain at least 85% of their characteristic values after conditioning in the environments listed below, the nominal strength and stiffness shall be reduced for design purposes in accordance with test data produced from testing simulating the anticipated environment. Materials that cannot retain at least 15% of their characteristic values after conditioning the listed environments are prohibited in structural

applications. Design tensile strength shall be reduced in accordance with material specific tests when in-service temperatures exceed of 90⁰F. Condition test samples as follows:

a. Water: Samples shall be immersed in distilled water having a temperature of 100 ± 3⁰F and tested after 1,000 hours of exposure.

b. Alternating Ultraviolet Light and Condensing Humidity: Samples shall be exposed according to Cycle No. 1 (0.89 W/m²/mm, 8 hours UV at 60⁰C, 4 hours condensation at 50⁰C) using UVA-340 lamps in an apparatus meeting the requirements of ASTM G154. Samples shall be tested within two hours after removal from the apparatus.

Commentary: Many FRP materials lose strength and stiffness as a result of environmental exposure. Adjustment of characteristic mechanical properties used in design is necessary to account for effects of exposure. Otherwise, the material may fail prematurely. Exposure to alkalis and freeze thaw may also adversely affect the performance of FRP materials. However, at this time, there are no ASTM protocols specifically for testing FRP materials in these environments. The designer should take these conditions into account when proportioning the structures and specifying FRP materials.

3605.7.2.4 Impact Resistance of FRP Materials. FRP sheet pile *bulkheads* shall have sufficient impact resistance, determined in accordance with ASTM D7136, for the intended application.

3605.7.2.5 Deflection of FRP Sheet Piling. Deflection of vinyl sheet pile *bulkheads* shall not exceed the lesser of 1/60 times the height from the mud line to the top of the wall or 2 inches. Effects of in-service temperatures in excess of 90⁰F on modulus of elasticity shall be considered in deflection calculations.

Commentary: FRP materials have a relatively low modulus of elasticity. Consequently, large deflections can occur in bulkheads that normally would have sufficient strength to withstand applied loads. Large deflections affect both stability of the bulkhead, especially in the presence of transient superimposed loads, and appearance. Therefore, deflections need to be limited.

3605.7.2.6 Fire, Smoke, and Toxicity. FRP materials shall be tested for the in-service thickness in accordance with ASTM D635 with a resulting burning rate of 2 ½ inches per minute or less.

Commentary: Criteria are consistent with provisions for CC2 plastics in Section 2606.4. ASTM D4216 references D635 for burning characteristics of vinyl materials, and allusion is made to similar requirements in the ASCE Prestandard for FRP.

3605.7.3 Carbon Fiber Reinforced Polymer Repair Products. Carbon Fiber Reinforced plate and wrap used for flexural and shear reinforcement of existing concrete structures shall be designed in accordance with the design procedures specified in ACI 440.2R. Mechanical properties of Carbon Fiber Reinforced plate and wrap shall be established in accordance with the tests specified in ACI 440.3R.

3605.8 Masonry. Masonry used in *bulkheads* and *dock* work shall comply with Chapter 21.

SECTION 3606 CONSTRUCTION OF PIERS, DOCKS, CATWALKS, GANGWAYS, AND FLOATING DOCKS

3606.1 Fixed piers. Fixed *piers* shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 3606.1.1 through 3606.1.4.

3606.1.1 Required depth of piles. Fixed *piers* shall be supported by pilings with tip penetrations dependent on the soil conditions and the total applied load. *Piers* support by shallow piling, legs or columns with point bearing on rock shall have provisions to resist horizontal forces and overturning, as well as

flotation uplift. *Piles* shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 18 and inspected in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 17.

3606.1.2 Structural steel and concrete members. Structural steel members shall be designed in accordance with AISC 360, Chapter 22 of this code, and the material requirements of this chapter. Concrete members shall be designed in accordance with ACI 318, Chapter 19 of this code, and the materials requirements of this chapter.

3606.1.3 Size of wood piles. *Piles* shall be sized in accordance with the American Wood Council National Design Specification. In no case shall round timber piles be less than 7 inches in diameter at the butt and have a minimum tip diameter of less than 5 ½ inches. Rectangular timber piles shall not be less than nominal 6 inches x 6 inches.

3606.1.4 Bracing of wood piles. Where required by design, bracing shall be sized to limit stresses in the *piles* from lateral loads in accordance with the American Wood Council National Design Specification to prevent buckling.

3606.1.5 Wood girder and joist spans. Maximum spans for *pier pile* caps or girders and joists or stringers shall be determined in accordance with the American Wood Council National Design Specification considering the member to be subject to wet use.

3606.1.6 Connections. Connections between *piling* or legs to *pile* caps, stringers, beams, bracing and deck shall have sufficient capacity to safely support all applied loads and provide transfer of load to adjoining members.

3606.1.7 Gangways. On coastal waterways, the maximum slope permitted shall be 3:1 at 0.0 mean low water or above and 2½:1 below 0.0 mean low water. On lakes and other inland waters, the maximum slope shall be 3:1 not less than 90% of the time and 2½:1 not more than 10% of the time.

3606.2 Flotation units. Flotation units shall be foam-filled encapsulated floats or polystyrene billets securely wrapped with Class I woven geotextile fabric in accordance with AASHTO M288. The use of metal barrels not specifically designed for use as flotation devices and unwrapped polystyrene billets are prohibited.

3606.3 Electrical service. All electrical service to marine structures shall be in accordance with the *North Carolina Electrical Code*.

3606.4 Fire protection. All fire protection for marine structures shall be in accordance with applicable provisions of the *North Carolina Fire Prevention Code*.

3606.5 Fuel docks. Fuel *docks* and other marine facilities handling flammable liquids shall comply with the *Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code*, NFPA 30 and the *North Carolina Fire Code*. All fuel installations shall be designed to prevent fuel spillage from entering the water. The fuel *docks* or floats shall be isolated to the extent that fire or explosion would have minimal opportunity to spread to or from the fuel *dock* to the berths. Storage tanks for public facilities shall be located a minimum distance of 50 feet from the dispenser with a shutoff valve at the tank.

Commentary: *Other standards typically referenced for fueling facilities are:
NFPA 30A—Automotive and Marine Service Station Code*

NFPA 70–National Electrical Code, Article 555, Marinas and Boatyards
NFPA 302–Pleasure and Commercial Motor Craft
NFPA 303–Marinas and Boatyards
PEI RP1000-09 –Recommended Practices for the Installation of Marina Fueling Systems

3606.6 Guardrails. For walkways, access *piers*, steps, or ramps, guardrails or other safety provisions shall be provided along the edges where the vertical drop to the lesser of the mean low water level, normal low water level (sounds), normal pool (lakes and rivers), or mud line exceeds 6 feet. Edges having a primary function other than walks or access ways, such as docking frontage and swimming access shall not require guardrails. Guardrails shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 16 for balconies. Guardrails shall be a minimum of 42 inches high and shall prevent the passage of a 21 inch sphere except where required otherwise by Chapter 11. Edge protection shall be provided as required by other **rules**.

***Commentary:** Chapter 36 requirements for guardrails are a compromise intended to address as many general cases as possible. In marine applications, guardrails or deletion of rails may be determined on a case by case basis due to the diversity of activities taking place on the waterfront. In many cases, function and view are important factors in the design of a barrier system. A case in point is an urban waterfront where small to medium sized vessels are docking along a pedestrian promenade. The solution was a minimal barrier system that would allow for function and view while alerting pedestrians that there is a hazard and channeling them away from the hazard. As a compromise, the committee attempted to incorporate these concepts into the draft code provisions. The 21 inch sphere limitation is based from minimum OSHA standards. For a vertical drop less than 6 feet, the intent of omitting guardrails considers that the drop is over water or above a soft substrate. Consideration for guardrails should be made when hazardous conditions exist.*

Exception: For private waterfront *piers* and *docks*, guardrails or other safety provisions shall be provided along the edges where the vertical drop to the lesser of the mean low water level, normal low water level (sounds), normal pool (lakes and rivers), or mud line exceeds 8 feet. Guardrails shall be a minimum of 36 inches high and shall prevent the passage of a 21 inch sphere. Edge protection shall be provided as required by other **rules**.

3606.7 Accessibility. *Piers, docks, catwalks, gangways, and floating docks* shall comply with Chapter 11 and ANSI/ICC A117.1 for accessibility.

***Commentary:** Compliance with the NC Building Code does not necessarily ensure compliance with the Federal law, The Americans with Disabilities Act. The designer and the owner should investigate Federal requirements. Refer to Chapter 11 for requirements regarding the number and distribution of accessible berths. The provisions of ANSI A117.1 note the maximum running and cross slopes of the floating dock along the accessible route cannot exceed 1:20 and 1:48, respectively, under static loading (no wave loading). Therefore, the maximum cross slope should be checked with any combination of dead load, uniform dock surface live load and dock surface concentrated load as prescribed in Section 3604.3.2. For maximum running slope on a floating dock, the same loadings must be checked including where the gangway lands on the floating dock at the ends of fingers. ANSI A117.1 provides exceptions to the requirements for maximum running slope, maximum rise and changes in level for gangways serving an accessible route based on the number of boat slips at the facility. The height and location of utilities and attached utility structures must be considered based on the provisions of ANSI A117.1.*

3606.8 Egress. *Piers and docks* shall be provided with means of egress in accordance with Sections 3606.8.1 through 3606.8.4.

3606.8.1 Occupant Load. Occupant load for *piers* and *docks* shall be calculated as follows:

3606.8.1.1 Piers and Boardwalks. Occupant load for piers and boardwalks intended for recreational fishing shall be calculated based on 3 linear feet of rail per person on the perimeter plus 50 square feet per person on a net area with a perimeter 3 feet inside the rail. Occupant load for *piers* and boardwalks intended for other uses shall be in accordance with Chapter 10.

Commentary: Occupants on fishing piers tend to be concentrated around the perimeter of the pier. Depending on the event, occupants on piers intended for assembly purposes can be densely packed over the entire area of the pier.

3606.8.1.2 Public Waterfront Docks. Occupant load for *docks* constructed at public marinas intended for mooring of private pleasure craft shall be calculated based on 30 square feet of net dock area per person.

3606.8.1.3 Private Waterfront Docks. Occupant load for private waterfront *docks* shall be calculated based on 20 square feet per person.

Commentary: Private waterfront docks are likely locations for parties, weddings, and other gatherings. The stated occupant load reflects this probability.

3606.8.2 Piers. *Piers* intended for recreational fishing, assembly, or educational purposes with travel distance to exit discharge exceeding 600 feet and greater than 15 feet above mean low water shall have emergency access ladders at 300 feet intervals and at the end of the *pier*. The *pier* shall be constructed of noncombustible material with the exception that the floor decking may be heavy timber.

Commentary: Emergency access ladders facilitate rescue by watercraft. Noncombustible construction is intended to limit the spread of fire. Heavy timber decking, while combustible, burns more slowly than dimension lumber and offers the designer some advantages in regards to energy absorption from wave forces and durability. Heavy timber decking is defined as solid sawn decking 3 inches nominal in thickness.

3606.8.3 Public Waterfront Docks. Public waterfront *docks* intended for mooring of private pleasure craft with travel distance to exit discharge in excess of 600 feet shall have a second means of egress or a means of rescue from the water. Construction for these *docks* shall be noncombustible, with the exception that wood walers may be embedded in the dock edges for attachment of mooring hardware.

Commentary: Boat owners may be able to cast off and move away from the dock. Guests may not have this option. Means of rescue by water can be designated harbor patrol, life rafts, or life preservers. Noncombustible construction is intended to slow the spread of fire.

3606.8.4 Buildings Constructed on Piers and Docks. Buildings constructed on public waterfront *piers* and *docks* shall comply with the requirements of all applicable provisions of the North Carolina State Building Code.

SECTION 3607 CONSTRUCTION: BULKHEADS AND REVETMENTS

3607.1 Bulkheads. *Bulkheads* shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 3607.1.1 through 3607.1.5.

3607.1.1 General. *Bulkheads* shall be constructed in a manner to be effective against erosion and provide for bank stabilization. The *bulkhead* system may consist of any of the following or combinations thereof: braced sheet pile walls with tie backs, king piles, and horizontal panels, gravity walls, cantilever and counterfort retaining walls. *Bulkhead* walls shall be constructed to prevent passage of fine material (See ASTM D 2487) through joints or cracks from the fill side to the stream side.

3607.1.2 Systems. Local site conditions and performance of *bulkheads* in service shall govern in selection of a system. The potential for erosion and scour at the mud line shall also be investigated, and

compensating features shall be reflected in the construction. *Bulkheads* shall be terminated by either tying into adjoining structures or by extending the *bulkhead* line a minimum of 10 feet in a landward direction at an angle of not less than 45 degrees to the shoreline in order to protect against end erosion or flanking by wave action. No structure shall be terminated without regard for end anchorage and stabilization.

3607.1.3 Guardrails. Where designated public walkways, steps, or ramps run adjacent to *bulkheads* within 6 feet, guardrails or other safety provisions shall be provided along the top of the wall where the vertical drop to the lesser of the mean low water level, normal low water level (sounds), normal pool (lakes and rivers), or mud line exceeds 6 feet. Guardrails shall be designed in accordance with Chapter 16 for balcony guardrails. Guardrails shall be 42 inches high and shall prevent the passage of a 21 inch sphere except where required otherwise by Chapter 11. Edge protection shall be provided as required by other **rules**.

Commentary: Chapter 36 requirements for guardrails are a compromise intended to address as many general cases as possible. In marine applications, guardrails or deletion of rails may be determined on a case by case basis due to the diversity of activities taking place on the waterfront. In many cases, function and view are important factors in the design of a barrier system. A case in point is an urban waterfront where small to medium sized vessels are docking along a pedestrian promenade. The solution was a minimal barrier system that would allow for function and view while alerting pedestrians that there is a hazard and channeling them away from the hazard. As a compromise, the committee attempted to incorporate these concepts into the code provisions. The 21 inch sphere limitation is based from minimum OSHA standards. For a vertical drop less than 6 feet, the intent of omitting guardrails considers that the drop is over water or above a soft substrate. Consideration for guardrails should be made when hazardous conditions exist.

Exception: For private waterfront *bulkheads* with designated walkways within 6 feet, guardrails or other safety provisions shall be provided along the edges where the vertical drop to the lesser of the mean low water level, normal low water level (sounds), normal pool (lakes and rivers), or mud line exceeds 8 feet. Guardrails shall be a minimum of 36 inches high and shall prevent the passage of a 21 inch sphere. A wall cap 30 inches or less in width shall not be considered a designated walkway unless it is connected to a walkway. Edge protection shall be provided as required by other **rules**.

3607.1.4 Wood Construction. For wood grades, member sizes, preservative treatment, and protection of metal fasteners and fittings, see Section 3605.3.

3607.1.5 Bulkheads of Materials Other than Wood. Vinyl, fiber reinforced polymer, aluminum, concrete, and steel *bulkheads* shall be constructed in a manner to ensure performance. Connections shall be designed to resist the full applied load. For materials and corrosion protection reference Sections 3605.4 through 3605.7.

3607.2 Revetments. Revetments shall be constructed in accordance with Sections 3607.2.1 through 3607.2.2

3607.2.1 Rigid revetments. Rigid revetments shall be founded on a firm foundation to prevent undermining and progressive instability. Provisions shall be made to provide **for toe** protection to compensate for known or anticipated scour. Additional protection may be needed in active areas and may consist of sheet piling along the toe or stone rip rap. **A pattern** of weep holes shall be provided in the face to relieve hydrostatic pressure behind the wall. Joints shall be sealed or provided with a properly designed filter to prevent loss of fines from the protected slope.

3607.2.2 Flexible revetments. Adequate provisions shall be made to prevent migration of fine materials through the structure. The face shall not be steeper than one unit horizontal to one unit vertical. Flatter slopes may be needed for stability depending on the construction materials and site conditions. The face may consist of armor stone, rip rap, or individual interlocking concrete units or poured concrete. Toe protection provisions shall be provided as discussed for the rigid type and the top of slope shall be detailed to prevent erosions under the revetment from surface water runoff. Flexible revetments shall be provided with a filter layer designed to prevent loss of fines from the protected slope and to relieve hydrostatic pressure behind the face.

Commentary: Flexible revetments include geo-textile construction such as sandbags and other geo-textile structures.

The effective date of this Rule is **January 1, 2016**.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code

2015 NC Existing Building Code

New Code Adoption. (130611 Item B-6)

This Rule was adopted to update to the 2015 NC Existing Building Code based on the 2012 International Code edition. The NC amendments can be downloaded at the link below.

http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Documents/2015%20NC%20EXISTING%20BLDG%20CODE%20Changes%20Only%20to%202012%20IEBC%20140401%20RRC%20140522%20ICC.pdf

The delayed effective date of this Rule is **March 1, 2015.**

The 1995 NC Existing Building Code will expire on March 1, 2015.

The NC Rehabilitation Code will expire on March 1, 2018.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code

***101.11. Accessibility for detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses.
(150915 Item B-1)***

101.11. Accessibility for detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. In detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, where there are four or more dwelling units or sleeping units in a single structure, the provisions for accessibility of this code for Group R-3 shall apply.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code

403.6.1, 404.6, 603.2, 703.3, 1203.3 Smoke Alarms. (141209 Item B-10)

(Add Section to Chapter 4)

403.6.1 Smoke alarms in one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses shall be provided with smoke alarms installed in accordance with Section 804.4.1.

404.6 Smoke alarms. Smoke alarms shall be provided and installed in accordance with Section 804.4.

(Add Section to Chapter 6)

603.2 Smoke alarms. Smoke alarms shall be provided and installed in accordance with Section 804.4.

(Add Section to Chapter 7)

703.2 Smoke alarms. Smoke alarms shall be provided and installed in accordance with Section 804.4.

(Add Section to Chapter 12)

1203.13 Smoke alarms. Smoke alarms shall be provided and installed in accordance with Section 804.4.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Existing Building Code

**Ch. 2, Section 403.7, 703.2, 1203.13, 1401.2.6, Ch. 47 Carbon Monoxide Detection.
(141209 Item B-9)**

(Add the following definition to Section 202)

[B] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

(Add Section to Chapter 4)

403.7 Carbon monoxide detection.

403.7.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Sections 403.7.1 through 403.7.6. **For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, carbon monoxide alarms shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.7.7.**

403.7.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group I-1, I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 403.7.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 403.7.1.2 through 403.7.1.6 exist.

403.7.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

403.7.1.3 Forced air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms where carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an *approved* location.

403.7.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:

2.1. In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or **classroom; or**

2.2. On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

403.7.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the private garage and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.

4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a private garage and dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms.

403.7.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 403.7.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 of the International Building Code or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the International Building Code shall not be considered a private garage.

403.7.2 Locations. Where required by Section 403.7.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 403.7.2.1 through 403.7.2.3.

403.7.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in dwelling units outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

403.7.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in sleeping units.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the sleeping unit where the sleeping unit or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

403.7.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or less.

403.7.3 Detection equipment. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 403.7.1 through 403.7.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 403.7.4 or with carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 403.7.5.

403.7.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 403.7.4.1 through 403.7.4.3.

403.7.4.1 Power source. Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.

403.7.4.2 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

403.7.4.3 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

403.7.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 403.7.5.1 through 403.7.5.3.

403.7.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075.

403.7.5.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 403.7.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

403.7.5.3 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.

403.7.6 Maintenance. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

403.7.7 Carbon monoxide alarms for one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. Where interior work requiring a permit occurs, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created or where fuel fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 403.7.7.1

Exception: Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fire appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling.

403.7.7.1 Where required. One- and two-family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an *approved* carbon monoxide alarm installed outside each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

403.7.7.2 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in or hard wired alarms are acceptable for use.

(Add Section to Chapter 4)

404.7. Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.7.

(Add Section to Chapter 6)

603.3. Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.7.

(Add Section to Chapter 7)

703.3. Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.7.

(Delete/Add Section to Chapter 8)

804.4.2 Carbon monoxide alarms for detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses. Detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses requiring a permit for interior work or the replacement or addition of a fuel fired appliance shall be provided with an *approved* carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s).

804.4.2.1 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in or hard wired alarms are acceptable for use.

804.4.2. Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.7.

(Add Section to Chapter 12)

1203.14. Carbon monoxide detection. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in accordance with Section 403.7.

(Add Section to Chapter 14)

1401.2.6 Carbon monoxide detection. Group R occupancies and classrooms in Group E occupancies shall be provided with carbon monoxide detection in accordance with Section 403.7.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code
407.1 Conformance. (150915 Item B-2)

[B] 407.1 Conformance.

No change shall be made in the use or occupancy of any building that would place the building in a different division of the same group of occupancy or in a different group of occupancies, unless such building is made to comply with the requirements of the *International Building Code* for such division or group of occupancy. Subject to the approval of the building official, the use or occupancy of *existing buildings* shall be permitted to be changed and the building is allowed to be occupied for purposes in other groups without conforming to all of the requirements of this code for those groups, provided the new or proposed use is of ~~equal or lesser hazard~~ less hazardous, based on ~~Table 407.1~~ Table 407.1 life and fire risk, than the existing use.

Table 407.1
Relative Occupancy Hazard

Life and Fire Risk Hazard	Occupancy Category
1 (highest)	H 1, H 2, H 3
2	A 1, A 2 (w/ nightclub), H 4, F 1, I 3, M, S 1
3	A 2 (w/o nightclub), A 3, A 5, B, F 2, I 2, R 1, S 2
4	A 4, E, I 1, R 2 greater than two stories in height or greater than 4 dwelling units
5 (lowest)	R 2 two stories or less in height and four dwelling units or less, R-3, R-4, U, One- and Two Family Dwellings.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.
 The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code

505.1 Level 3 Alteration. (140610 Item B-3)

505.1 Scope. Level 3 Alteration (Reconstruction) ~~apply~~ applies where the work area exceeds 50 percent of the aggregate area of the building in any 12 month period.

Exception: Alterations limited to displays or showrooms in Group M Occupancies.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code

805.2 Means of Egress. (140610 Item B-4)

805.2 General. The means of egress shall comply with the requirements of this section.

Exceptions:

1. Where the work area and the means of egress serving it complies with NFPA 101.
2. Means of egress conforming to the requirements of the building code under which the building was constructed shall be considered compliant means of egress if, in the opinion of the code official, they do not constitute a distinct hazard of life.
3. In one and two family dwellings, stairways not required for egress are permitted to be as narrow as 26 inches.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2015 NC Existing Building Code

805.6 Dead End Corridors. (140610 Item B-5)

805.6 Dead-end corridors. Dead-end corridors in any work area shall not exceed 35 feet.

Exceptions:

1. Where dead-end corridors of greater length are permitted by the *International Building Code*.
2. In other than Group A and H occupancies, the maximum length of an existing dead-end corridor shall be 50 feet in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic fire alarm system installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
3. In other than Group A and H occupancies, the maximum length of an existing dead-end corridor shall be 70 feet in buildings equipped throughout with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the *International Building Code*.
4. ~~In other than Group A and H occupancies, the maximum length of a newly constructed, or extended dead end corridor shall not exceed 50 feet on floors equipped with an automatic sprinkler system installed in accordance with the International Building Code.~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code, Chapter 4

2012 NC Residential Code, Chapter 11

Duct leakage to the outside. (120910 Item B-3)

Amend the 2012 NC Energy Conservation Code, Chapter 4 and 2012 NC Residential Code, Chapter 11 with the attached revisions. The current energy provisions require duct testing to be verified and identify one method of doing so. The proposed language provides an alternative testing method for leakage to the outside. The amended “2012 NCECC, 2012 NCRC, Duct Leakage to the Outside” is published separately at the following link.

http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Documents/2012_NCBuilding_Code_amendments/2012%20NCECC,%202012%20NCRC,%20Duct%20Leakage%20to%20the%20Outside%20120910%20B3.pdf

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2013.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code

402 Fenestration. (141209 Item B-12)

402.5 Maximum Fenestration U-Factor and SHGC. (140610 Item B-2)

TABLE 402.1.1

INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT^a

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR _{b,l}	SKYLIGHT ^b U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC _{b,e,m}	CEILING R-VALUE _k	WOOD FRAME WALL R-VALUE _e	MASS WALL R-VALUE _i	FLOOR R-VALUE	BASEMENT WALL R-VALUE _c	SLAB R-VALUE & DEPTH _d	CRAWL SPACE WALL R-VALUE _c
3	0.35	0.65	0.30	30	13	5/10	19	10/13 ^f	0	5/13
4	0.35	0.60	0.30	38 or 30 cont. _j	15, 13+2.5 ^h	5/10	19	10/13	10	10/13
5	0.35	0.60	NR	38 or 30 cont. _j	19, 13+5, or 15+3 ^{eh}	13/17	30 ^g	10/13	10	10/13

l. In addition to the exemption in Section 402.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

m. In addition to the exemption in Section 402.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

TABLE 402.1.3

EQUIVALENT U-FACTORS^a

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR _e	SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR	CEILING U-FACTOR	FRAME WALL U-FACTOR	MASS WALL U-FACTOR _b	FLOOR U-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR _d	CRAWL SPACE WALL U-FACTOR _c
3	0.35	0.65	0.035	0.082	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.136
4	0.35	0.60	0.030	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.35	0.60	0.030	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

e. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty. When applying this note and using the REScheck “UA Trade-off” compliance method to allow continued use of the software, the applicable fenestration products shall be modeled as meeting the U-factor of 0.35 and the SHGC of 0.30, as applicable, but the fenestration products actual U-factor and actual SHGC shall be noted in the comments section of the software for documentation of application of this note to the applicable products. Compliance for these substitute products shall be verified compared to the allowed substituted maximum U-value requirement and maximum SHGC requirement, as applicable.

402.3.5 Thermally isolated conditioned sunroom U-factor and SHGC. The maximum fenestration U-factor shall be 0.40 and the maximum skylight U-factor shall be 0.75. Sunrooms with cooling systems shall have a maximum fenestration SHGC of 0.40 for all glazing.

New windows and doors separating the sunroom from conditioned space shall meet the building thermal envelope requirements. Sunroom additions shall maintain thermal isolation; and shall be served by a separate heating or cooling system, or be thermostatically controlled as a separate zone of the existing system.

Exception: A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 and, when cooling is provided, a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

402.5 Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC (Mandatory Requirements). The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*-factor permitted using trade-offs from Section 402.1.4 shall be 0.40. Maximum skylight *U*-factors shall be 0.65 in zones 4 and 5 and 0.60 in zone 3. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration SHGC permitted using trade-offs from Section 405 in Zones 3 and 4 shall be ~~0.40~~ 0.50.

Exception: A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code

403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. (120611 Item B-10)

403.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat (Mandatory Requirements). Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

A heat strip outdoor temperature lockout shall be provided to prevent supplemental heat operation in response to the thermostat being changed to a warmer setting. The lockout shall be set no lower than 35 degrees F and no higher than 40 degrees F.

Exception: In lieu of a heat strip outdoor temperature lockout, the following time and temperature electric-resistance control may be used. After six minutes of compressor run time in heat mode, supplemental electric heat shall energize only if the leaving air temperature from the indoor coil is below 90 degrees F. If the indoor coil leaving air temperature exceeds 100 degrees F, supplemental heat shall automatically de-energize, but allow the compressor to continue to operate until the call is satisfied. No thermostat shall initiate supplemental electric heat at any time. Thermostat controlled emergency heat shall not be limited by outdoor temperature. Electric resistance supplemental heat during defrost shall operate normally without limitation.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Residential Code, Section N1103.1.2.]

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code

TABLE 405.5.2(1) Air exchange rate. (140909 Item B-2)

TABLE 405.5.2(1)

SPECIFICATIONS FOR THE STANDARD REFERENCE AND PROPOSED DESIGNS

(Air exchange rate and Mechanical ventilation components only)

BUILDING COMPONENT	STANDARD REFERENCE DESIGN	PROPOSED DESIGN
Air exchange rate	<p>Specific leakage area (SLA)$d = 0.00028$ or 5 ACH50.</p> <p><u>5 ACH50</u></p> <p><u>The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and the same as in the proposed design, but no greater than continuous operation at $0.01 \times \text{CFA} + 7.5 (N_{br} + 1)$ where:</u></p> <p><u>CFA = conditioned floor area</u></p> <p><u>N_{br} = number of bedrooms</u></p> <p><u>Energy recovery shall not be assumed for mechanical ventilation.</u></p>	<p>For residences that are not tested, the same as the standard reference design. <u>For tested residences, the measured air exchange rate.</u> ^e <u>The mechanical ventilation rate shall be in addition to the air leakage rate and shall be as proposed.</u> ^f</p>
Mechanical ventilation	<p>None, except where mechanical ventilation is specified by the proposed design, in which case:</p> <p>Annual vent fan energy use: $\text{kWh/yr} = 0.03942 \times \text{CFA} + 29.565 \times (N_{br} + 1)$ where:</p> <p>CFA = conditioned floor area</p> <p>N_{br} = number of bedrooms</p>	As proposed

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code

501.1 Scope. (120611 Item B-11)

501.1 Scope. The requirements contained in this chapter are applicable to commercial buildings, or portions of commercial buildings. These commercial buildings shall either:

1. Meet the requirements contained in this chapter, or
2. ~~Comply with the mandatory provisions of 2007 ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, *Energy Standard for Buildings Except for Low-Rise Residential Buildings* and exceed the minimum level of energy efficiency it prescribes by 20% following the procedure in ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1, Appendix G.~~ Meet the requirements of ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA Standard 90.1 - 2010.

Chapter 6 REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASHRAE

90.1 — ~~2007~~ 2010 Energy Standard for Buildings Except Low-rise Residential Buildings (ANSI/ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1 - ~~2007~~ 2010) **501.1, 501.2, 502.1.1, Table 502.2(2)**

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code

Tables 502.1.2, 502.2(1) and 502.2(2) Building envelope requirements. (120910 Item B-2)

Tables 502.1.2, 502.2(1) Building Envelope Requirements. (130311 Item B-10)

TABLE 502.1.2 Building Envelope. (141209 Item B-2)

TABLE 502.1.2 BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS. (150609 Item B-2)

**TABLE 502.1.2
BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS OPAQUE ELEMENT, MAXIMUM U-FACTORS**

Climate Zone	3		4		5	
	All Other	Group R	All Other	Group R	All Other	Group R
Roofs						
Insulation entirely above deck	U-0.039	U-0.039	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032
Metal buildings (with R-5 thermal blocks ^a)	U-0.041	U-0.041	U-0.035 U-0.037	U-0.035 U-0.037	U-0.035 U-0.037	U-0.035 U-0.037
Attic and other-wood framing	U-0.027	U-0.041 U-0.027	U-0.021 U-0.024	U-0.021 U-0.024	U-0.021 U-0.024	U-0.021 U-0.024
Attic and other – steel framing	U-0.035	U-0.035	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029	U-0.029
Walls, Above Grade						
Mass	U-0.123	U-0.104	U-0.104	U-0.090	U-0.090	U-0.060 U-0.071
Metal Building	U-0.072 U-0.094	U-0.050 U-0.072	U-0.060	U-0.050	U-0.050	U-0.050
Metal framed	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.055 U-0.064	U-0.049 U-0.064	U-0.049 U-0.064	U-0.043 U-0.055
Wood framed and other	U-0.064	U-0.051 U-0.064	U-0.051 U-0.064	U-0.045 U-0.064	U-0.045 U-0.064	U-0.041 U-0.051
Walls, Below Grade						
Below-grade wall ^a	C-0.119	C-0.119	C-0.119	C-0.092	C-0.119	C-0.092
Floors						
Mass	U-0.064	U-0.064	U-0.057	U-0.051	U-0.057	U-0.051
Joist / Framing-wood	U-0.033	U-0.033	U-0.027 U-0.026	U-0.027 U-0.026	U-0.027 U-0.026	U-0.027 U-0.026
Joist / Framing-steel	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032	U-0.032
Slab-on-Grade Floors						
Unheated slabs	F-0.730	F-0.540	F-0.520	F-0.520	F-0.520	F-0.510
Heated slabs	F-0.860	F-0.860	F-0.688 F-0.843	F-0.688	F-0.688	F-0.688

a. When heated slabs are placed below-grade, below grade walls must meet the *F*-factor requirements for perimeter insulation according to the heated slab-on-grade construction.

TABLE 502.2(1)
BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS – OPAQUE ASSEMBLIES

Climate Zone	3		4		5	
	All Other	Group R	All Other	Group R	All Other	Group R
Roofs						
Insulation entirely above deck	R - 25 ci	R-25 ci	R - 30 ci	R-30 ci	R - 30 ci	R-30 ci
Metal buildings(with R-5 thermal blocks) ^{a, b}	R-10 + R-19 FC	R-10 + R-19 FC	R-19 + R-11 LS or R-25 + R-8 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS or R-25 + R-8 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS or R-25 + R-8 LS	R-19 + R-11 LS or R-25 + R-8 LS
Attic and other - wood framing	R-38	R-38	R-42	R-42	R-42	R-42
Attic and other - steel framing	R-38	R-38	R-49	R-49	R-49	R-49
Walls, Above Grade						
Mass	R-7.6 ci	R-9.5 ci	R-9.5 ci	R-11.4 ci	R-11.4 ci	R-15 ci
Metal building ^b	R-0 + R-13 ci R-0 + R-9.8 ci	R-0 + R-19 ci R-0 + R-13 ci	R-0 + R-15.8 ci	R-0 + R-19 ci	R-0 + R-19 ci	R-0 + R-19 ci
Metal framed	R-13 + 7.5 ci	R- 13 + R-7.5 ci	R-13 + R-10 ci R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-12.5 ci R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-12.5 ci R-13 + R-7.5ci	R-13 + R-15 ci R-13 + R-10ci
Wood framed and other	R-13 + R-3.8 ci or R-20	R-19, R-13 + R-5, or R-15 + R-3½ R-13 + R-3.8 ci or R-20	R-13 + R-7.5 ci R-13 + R-3.8ci or R-20	R-19, R-13 + R-5, or R-15 + R-3½ R-13 + R-3.8 ci or R-20	R-13 + R-10 ci R-13 + R-3.8 ci or R-20	R-19, R-13 + R-5, or R-15 + R-3½ R-13 + R-7.5ci or R-20 + R- 3.8ci
Walls, Below Grade						
Below-grade wall ^c	R-7.5 ci	R-7.5 ci	R-7.5 ci	R-10 ci	R-7.5 ci	R-10 ci
Floors						
Mass	R-12.5 ci	R-12.5 ci	R-14.6 ci	R-16.7 ci	R-14.6 ci	R-16.7 ci
Joist / Framing	R-30 ^e	R-30 ^e	R-38	R-38	R-38	R-38
Slab-on-Grade Floors^d						
Unheated slabs	NR	R-10 for 24 in.	R-15 for 24 in.	R-15 for 24 in.	R-15 for 24 in.	R-20 for 24 in.
Heated slabs	R-15 for 24 in.	R-15 for 24 in.	R-20 for 24 in.	R-20 for 48 in.	R-20 for 48 in.	R-20 for 48 in.
Opaque Doors						
Swinging	U - 0.70	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50
Roll-up or sliding	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50	U - 0.50

LS = Liner System – Liner systems shall have a minimum R-3.5 thermal spacer block between the purlins and the metal roof panels as required, unless compliance is shown by the overall assembly U-factor

FC = Filled Cavity – Filled Cavity assemblies shall have a minimum R-5 thermal spacer block between the purlins and the metal roof panels as required, unless compliance is shown by the overall assembly U-factor

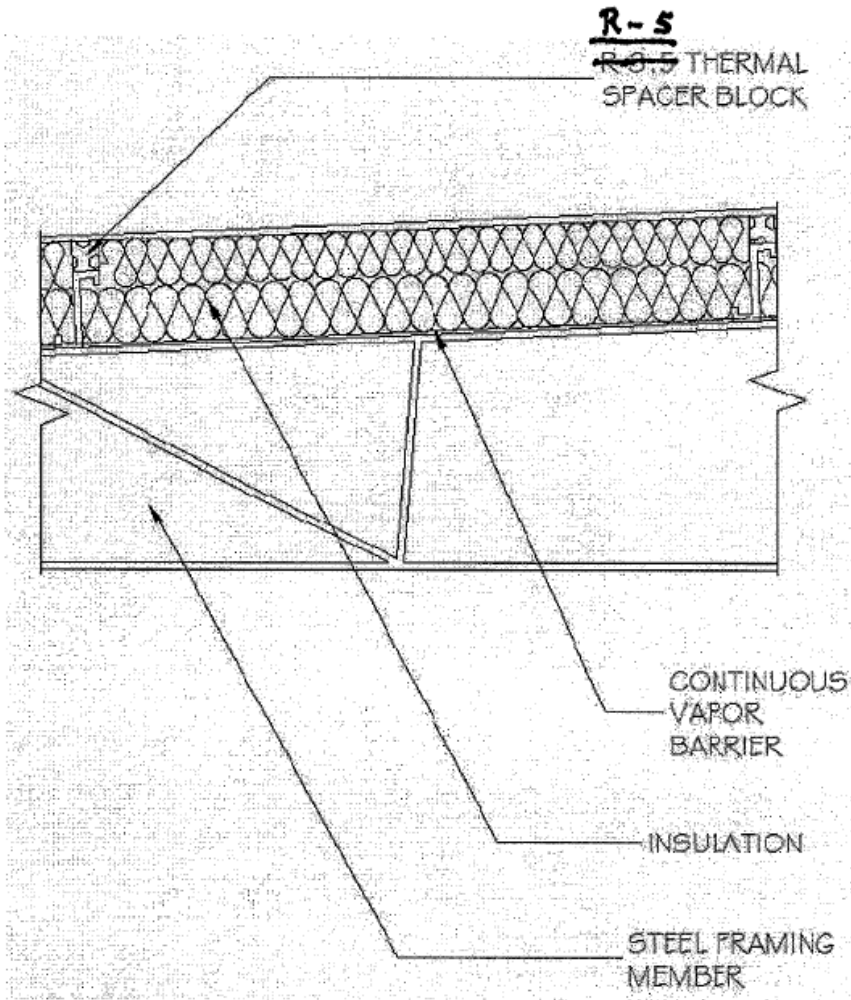
TABLE 502.2(2)

BUILDING ENVELOPE REQUIREMENTS – OPAQUE ASSEMBLIES

ROOFS	DESCRIPTION
<p>R-11 10 + R-19 FC</p>	<p>Filled cavity fiberglass insulation. A continuous vapor barrier is installed below the purlins and uninterrupted by framing members. Both layers of uncompressed, unfaced fiberglass insulation rest on top of the vapor barrier and are installed parallel, between the purlins. A minimum R-3.5 thermal spacer block is placed above the purlin/batt, and the roof deck is secured to the purlins. Drawings of typical details are shown in Appendix 2.2.</p>

(Portions of table not shown remain unchanged.)

Revise Appendix 2.2 as follows:



**SECTION VIEW OF METAL FRAME ROOF:
FILLED CAVITY FIBERGLASS INSULATION**

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2013.

The effective date of this Rule is December 1, 2013.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

2012 NC Fire Code

101.2.1 Appendices. (101214 Item B-30)

101.2.1 Appendices. Provisions in the appendices shall not be enforceable unless specifically adopted by the local governing authority having jurisdiction and subsequently approved for use by the Building Code Council.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is September 1, 2011.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

105.7.7 Flammable and combustible liquids. (130611 Item B-4)

105.7.7 Flammable and combustible liquids. A construction permit is required:

1. To install, repair or modify a pipeline for the transportation of flammable or *combustible liquids*.
2. To install, construct or alter tank vehicles, equipment, tanks, plants, terminals, wells, fuel-dispensing stations, refineries, distilleries and similar facilities where flammable and *combustible liquids* are produced, processed, transported, stored, dispensed or used. Maintenance performed in accordance with this code is not considered an installation, construction or alteration and does not require a permit.
3. To install, alter, remove, abandon or otherwise dispose of a flammable or *combustible liquid* tank.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

106 Inspections. (141209 Item B-3)

SECTION 106 INSPECTIONS

In order to preserve and protect public health and safety and to satisfy the requirements of General Statute 153A-364 and General Statute 160A-424, political subdivisions assuming inspection duties, as set out in General Statute 153A-351 and General Statute 160A-411, shall have a periodic inspection schedule for the purpose of identifying activities and conditions in buildings, structures and premises that pose dangers of fire, explosion or related hazards. Such inspection schedule shall be *approved* by the local governing body and shall be submitted to the Office of State Fire Marshal of the Department of Insurance. In no case shall inspections be conducted less frequently than described in the schedule below:

Once every year

Hazardous, institutional, high-rise assembly except those noted below, and Residential except one- and two family dwellings and only interior common areas of dwelling units of multi-family occupancies.

New and existing lodging establishments, including hotels, motels, and tourist homes that provide accommodations for seven or more continuous days (extended-stay establishments), bed and breakfast inns and bed and breakfast homes as defined in G.S. 130A-247 for the installation and maintenance of carbon monoxide alarms and detectors in accordance with G.S. 143-138(b2).

Once every two years

Industrial and educational (except public schools).

Once every three years

Assembly occupancies with an occupant load less than 100, business, mercantile, storage, churches, synagogues, and miscellaneous Group U occupancies.

Frequency rates for inspections of occupancies as mandated by the North Carolina General Statutes shall supersede this schedule. Nothing in this section is intended to prevent a jurisdiction from conducting more frequent inspections than the schedule listed above or the schedule filed with the Office of State Fire Marshal of the Department of Insurance.

On unattended or vacant structures, the fire code official shall affix a letter on the premises in a conspicuous place at or near the entrance to such premises requesting an inspection in accordance with this section. This order of notice shall be mailed by registered or certified mail with return receipt requested, to the last known address of the owner, occupant or both. If the owner, occupant or both shall fail to respond to said notice within 10 calendar days, these actions by the fire code official shall be deemed to constitute an inspection in accordance with this section.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

308.1.6.3 Sky lanterns. (150310 Item B-5)

308.1.6.3 Sky lanterns. A person shall not release or cause to be released an untethered *sky lantern*.

Add the following to Section 202 General Definitions:

SKY LANTERN. An unmanned device with a fuel source that incorporates an open flame in order to make the device airborne.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

310.9 Hookah or water pipe use. (140909 Item B-5)

310.9 Hookah or water pipe use. The use of hookahs or similar devices within buildings shall comply with all of the following:

1. An *approved* ventilation system is required.
 - 1.1 The room or building shall comply with the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* Section 403.3 for a smoking lounge.
 - 1.2 Carbon monoxide accumulation shall be controlled in accordance with the *North Carolina Mechanical Code* Section 502.
2. Coals shall be transported from the preparation area in an *approved* noncombustible container.
3. Hookah pipes shall be located and positioned in such a manner as to prevent overturning.
4. Disposal, use, or handling of ashes and coals shall comply with Sections 305.1 and 305.2.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

**316.5 Structures and outdoor storage underneath high-voltage transmission lines.
(130311 Item B-7)**

316.5.3 Parking. Transient parking of passenger vehicles is allowed as follows:

1. The utility provider grants permission to park within their easement or right of way;
2. Each vehicle shall be 10,000lb GVW or less;
3. The lowest conductor of the transmission line shall be 25ft. above parking lot surface;
4. The transmission line voltage shall be 230kv or less; and
5. Transient parking is a time period of no more than twelve consecutive hours.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

319 Rooftop Gardens and Landscaped Roofs. (140610 Item B-15)

SECTION 319 ROOFTOP GARDENS AND LANDSCAPED ROOFS

319.1 General. Rooftop gardens and landscaped roofs shall be installed and maintained in accordance with Sections 319.2 through 319.5 and Sections 1505.0 and 1507.16 of the *International Building Code*.

319.2 Rooftop garden or landscaped roof size. Rooftop garden or landscaped roof areas shall not exceed 15,625 square feet (1,450 m²) in size for any single area with a maximum dimension of 125 feet (39 m) in length or width. A minimum 6-foot-wide (1.8 m) clearance consisting of a Class A-rated roof system complying with ASTM E 108 or UL 790 shall be provided between adjacent rooftop gardens or landscaped roof areas.

319.3 Rooftop structure and equipment clearance. For all vegetated roofing systems abutting combustible vertical surfaces, a Class A-rated roof system complying with ASTM E 108 or UL 790 shall be achieved for a minimum 6-foot-wide (1.8 m) continuous border placed around rooftop structures and all rooftop equipment including, but not limited to, mechanical and machine rooms, penthouses, skylights, roof vents, solar panels, antenna supports, and building service equipment.

319.4 Vegetation. Vegetation shall be maintained in accordance with Sections 319.4.1 and 319.4.2.

319.4.1 Irrigation. Supplemental irrigation shall be provided to maintain levels of hydration necessary to keep green roof plants alive and to keep dry foliage to a minimum.

319.4.2 Dead foliage. Excess biomass, such as overgrown vegetation, leaves, and other dead and decaying material, shall be removed at regular intervals not less than two times per year.

319.4.3 Maintenance plan. The *fire code official* is authorized to require a maintenance plan for vegetation placed on roofs due to the size of a roof garden, materials used, or when a fire hazard exists to the building or exposures due to the lack of maintenance.

319.5 Maintenance equipment. Fueled equipment stored on roofs and used for the care and maintenance of vegetation on roofs shall be stored in accordance with Section 313.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

320 *Group E in churches, private schools and public schools. (140311 Item B-12)*

320 **Group E in churches, private schools and public schools.** Rooms used for first grade children and younger shall be located on the *level of exit discharge*. Rooms used for second grade children shall not be located more than one *story* above the *level of exit discharge*.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule is currently printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 427.3]

2012 NC Fire Code

503.2.1 Dimensions. Fire apparatus access. (121210 Item B-5)

503.2.1 Dimensions. Fire apparatus access roads shall have an unobstructed width of not less than 20 feet (6096 mm), exclusive of shoulders, except for approved security gates in accordance with Section 503.6 and an unobstructed vertical clearance of 13 feet 6 inches (4115 mm).

Exception: Fire apparatus access roads constructed and maintained in accordance with NC DOT Minimum Construction Standards for Subdivision Roads, when approved by the fire code official.

Add reference to Chapter 47:

NC DOT North Carolina Department of Transportation

Std 1/2010 Subdivision Roads Minimum Construction Standards 503.2.1

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

505.1.1 Suite/Room identification. (150609 Item B-3)

505.1.1 Suite/Room identification. Where numerical addresses are posted to identify suites or rooms within buildings, the first digit of the suite or room **number** shall match the floor **number** signage.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

509.1.1 Utility Identification. (140610 Item B-16)

509.1.1 Utility identification. Gas shutoff valves, electric meters, service switches, and other utility equipment shall be clearly and legibly marked to identify the unit or space that it serves. Identification shall be made in a manner that is visible and shall be maintained.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems. (140909 Item B-6)

605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems. Solar photovoltaic power systems shall be installed in accordance with Sections 605.11.1 through 605.11.2, the *International Building Code* and NFPA 70.

605.11.1 Access and pathways. Roof access, pathways, and spacing requirements shall be provided in accordance with Sections 605.11.1.1 through 605.11.1.3.3.

Exceptions:

1. Detached, non-habitable Group U structures including, but not limited to, parking shade structures, carports, solar trellises, and similar structures.
2. Roof access, pathways, and spacing requirements need not be provided where the fire chief has determined that rooftop operations shall not be employed.

605.11.1.1 Roof access points. Roof access points shall be located in areas that do not require the placement of ground ladders over openings such as windows or doors, and located at strong points of building construction in locations where the access point does not conflict with overhead obstructions such as tree limbs, wires, or signs.

605.11.1.2 Solar photovoltaic systems for Group R-3 buildings. Solar photovoltaic systems for Group R-3 buildings shall comply with Sections 605.11.1.2.1 through 605.11.1.2.5.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to one and two family dwelling and townhomes.

605.11.1.2.1 Size of solar photovoltaic array. Each photovoltaic array shall be limited to 150 feet (45 720 mm) by 150 feet (45 720 mm). Multiple arrays shall be separated by a 3-foot-wide (914 mm) clear access pathway.

605.11.1.2.2 Hip roof layouts. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings with hip roof layouts shall be located in a manner that provides a 3-foot-wide (914 mm) clear access pathway from the eave to the ridge on each roof slope where panels and modules are located. The access pathway shall be at a location on the building capable of supporting the fire fighters accessing the roof.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or less.

605.11.1.2.3 Single-ridge roofs. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings with a single ridge shall be located in a manner that provides two, 3-foot-wide (914 mm) access pathways from the eave to the ridge on each roof slope where panels and modules are located.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or less.

605.11.1.2.4 Roofs with hips and valleys. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings with roof hips and valleys shall not be located closer than 18 inches (457 mm) to a hip or a valley where panels/modules are to be placed on both sides of a hip or valley. Where panels are to be located on only one side of a hip or valley that is of equal length, the panels shall be permitted to be placed directly adjacent to the hip or valley.

Exception: These requirements shall not apply to roofs with slopes of two units vertical in 12 units horizontal (2:12) or less.

605.11.1.2.5 Allowance for smoke ventilation operations. Panels and modules installed on Group R-3 buildings shall be located not less than 3 feet (914 mm) from the ridge in order to allow for fire department smoke ventilation operations.

Exception: Panels and modules shall be permitted to be located up to the roof ridge where an alternative ventilation method approved by the fire chief has been provided or where the fire chief has determined vertical ventilation techniques shall not be employed.

605.11.1.3 Other than Group R-3 buildings. Access to systems for buildings, other than those containing Group R-3 occupancies, shall be provided in accordance with Sections 605.11.1.3.1 through 605.11.1.3.3. **Exception:** Where it is determined by the fire code official that the roof configuration is similar to that of a Group R-3 occupancy, the residential access and ventilation requirements in Sections 605.11.1.2.1 through 605.11.1.2.5 shall be permitted to be used.

605.11.1.3.1 Access. There shall be a minimum 6 foot-wide (1829 mm) clear perimeter around the edges of the roof.

Exception: Where either axis of the building is 250 feet (76 200 mm) or less, the clear perimeter around the edges of the roof shall be permitted to be reduced to a minimum 4 foot wide (1290 mm).

605.11.1.3.2 Pathways. The solar installation shall be designed to provide designated pathways. The pathways shall meet the following requirements:

1. The pathway shall be over areas capable of supporting fire fighters accessing the roof.
2. The centerline axis pathways shall be provided in both axes of the roof. Centerline axis pathways shall run where the roof structure is capable of supporting fire fighters accessing the roof.
3. Pathways shall be a straight line not less than 4 feet (1290 mm) clear to roof standpipes or ventilation hatches.
4. Pathways shall provide not less than 4 feet (1290 mm) clear around roof access hatch with not less than one singular pathway not less than 4 feet (1290 mm) clear to a parapet or roof edge.

605.11.1.3.3 Smoke ventilation. The solar installation shall be designed to meet the following requirements:

1. Arrays shall not be greater than 150 feet (45 720 mm) by 150 feet (45 720 mm) in distance in either axis in order to create opportunities for fire department smoke ventilation operations.
2. Smoke ventilation options between array sections shall be one of the following:
 - 2.1 A pathway 8 feet (2438 mm) or greater in width.
 - 2.2 A 4-foot (1290 mm) or greater in width pathway and bordering roof skylights or gravity-operated dropout smoke and heat vents on not less than one side.
 - 2.3 A 4-foot (1290 mm) or greater in width pathway and bordering all sides of non-gravity-operated dropout smoke and heat vents.
 - 2.4 A 4-foot (1290 mm) or greater in width pathway and bordering 4-foot by 8-foot (1290 mm by 2438 mm) “venting cutouts” every 20 feet (6096 mm) on alternating sides of the pathway.

605.11.2 Ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays. Ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays shall comply with Section 605.11 and this section. Setback requirements shall not apply to ground-mounted, free-standing photovoltaic arrays. A clear, brush-free area of 10 feet (3048 mm) shall be required for ground-mounted photovoltaic arrays.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 605.11 Solar photovoltaic power systems.]

2012 NC Fire Code

902 Definitions. (150609 Item B-4)

Section 902 Definitions

Night Club. ~~An establishment meeting all of the following—~~ An A-2 occupancy meeting all of the following conditions:

1. ~~Has a posted capacity or occupant load that exceeds one occupant per 15 square foot (1.39m²) net~~ The aggregate floor area of concentrated use and standing space that is used for dancing or viewing of performers exceeds 10 percent of the Group A-2 fire area, excluding adjacent lobby areas; and
2. Provides live or recorded entertainment by performing artist; and
3. ~~Serves~~ Allows alcoholic beverages ~~beverage~~ beverage consumption.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 902 Definitions.]

903.2.8 Group R automatic sprinkler system. (130311 Item B-8)

[F] 903.2.8 Group R. An **automatic sprinkler system** shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3 throughout all buildings with a Group R **fire area**, except as provided for in Section 903.2.8.1.

Exceptions:

1. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in new adult and child care facilities located in existing Group R-3 and R-4 occupancies.
2. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in ~~Group R-1~~ *temporary overflow shelters*.
3. Group R-2 buildings housing farm workers and their families located outside of a municipality's building rules jurisdiction that are not exempted by Section 903.2.8.1 may install a 13D multipurpose sprinkler system where all of the following conditions exist:
 - 3.1. The Group R building cannot exceed two stories in height.
 - 3.2. The Group R building cannot exceed 2500 square feet (232 m²) in area.
 - 3.3. The Group R building shall have two remote means of egress.
4. Group R-2 *fire areas* in fire stations may install a 13D sprinkler system in accordance with Section 903.3.5.1 when separated from other occupancies by a *fire wall* where all of the following conditions exist.
 - 4.1. The Group R building cannot exceed one story in height,
 - 4.2. The Group R fire area cannot exceed 2500 square feet (232 m²) in area.
 - 4.3. The Group R fire area has two remote means of egress.
5. An *automatic sprinkler system* is not required in camping units located within a campground where all of the following conditions exist.
 - 5.1. The camping unit is limited to one story in height,
 - 5.2. The camping unit is less than 400 square feet (37 m²) in area.
 - 5.3. The camping unit does not have a kitchen.

[F] 903.2.8.1 Group R Migrant Housing. Migrant housing as defined by GS 95-223 shall be exempt from the requirements of Section 903.2.8 when all of the following conditions exist:

1. The Group R building is not more than one story in height.
2. The Group R building meets all of the requirements of GS 95-222 through **GS 95-229.1** (Chapter 95, Article 19) and 29 CFR 1910.142, as amended.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 903.2.8]

2012 NC Fire Code

908.7 Carbon monoxide alarms. (130910 Item B-8)

908.7 Carbon monoxide alarms. Group I-1, I-2, I-4 or R occupancies located in a building containing a fuel-burning heater, appliance, fireplace, or has an attached garage shall be equipped with single-station carbon monoxide alarms. The carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and be installed and maintained in accordance with NFPA 720 and the manufacturer's instructions. An open parking garage, as defined in Chapter 2 of the International Building Code, or an enclosed parking garage ventilated in accordance with Section 404 of the International Mechanical Code shall not be considered an attached garage.

Exception: *Sleeping units or dwelling units* that do not themselves contain a fuel-burning heater, appliance, fireplace or have an attached garage, but are located in a building with a fuel-burning heater, appliance, fireplace or an attached garage, need not be equipped with single-station carbon monoxide alarms provided that:

1. The *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* is located more than one story above or below any story which contains a fuel-burning heater, appliance, fireplace, or attached garage;
2. The *sleeping unit* or *dwelling unit* is not connected by duct work or ventilation shafts to any room containing a fuel-burning heater, appliance, fireplace or attached garage;
and
3. The building is equipped with a common area carbon monoxide alarm system.

908.7.1 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems, which include carbon monoxide detectors and audible notification appliances installed and maintained in accordance with NFPA 720, shall be permitted. The carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed as complying with UL 2075.

Amend Chapter 47 as follows:

Add NFPA Standard:

720-09 Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide(CO) Detection.....908.7, 908.7.1 and Warning Equipment, 2009 Edition

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2014.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 908.7]

2012 NC Fire Code

909.20.6 Manual smoke removal. (130311 Item B-6)

909.20.6 Manual smoke removal. Where manually operated panels or windows are required by Section 403.4.6 of the Building Code, they shall be maintained in an operable condition and identified in an *approved* manner.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: Section 908.7, Carbon Monoxide Alarms has been incorporated into this Rule.]

(Add the following definition to)

SECTION 202

GENERAL DEFINITIONS

[B] PRIVATE GARAGE. A building or portion of a building in which motor vehicles used by the tenants of the building or buildings on the premises are stored or kept, without provisions for repairing or servicing such vehicles for profit.

SECTION 915

CARBON MONOXIDE DETECTION

915.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in new buildings in accordance with Sections 915.1.1 through 915.6.

915.1.1 Where required. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in Group I-1, I-2, I-4 and R occupancies and in classrooms in Group E occupancies in the locations specified in Section 915.2 where any of the conditions in Sections 915.1.2 through 915.1.6 exist.

915.1.2 Fuel-burning appliances and fuel-burning fireplaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms that contain a fuel-burning appliance or a fuel-burning fireplace.

915.1.3 Forced air furnaces. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms served by a fuel-burning, forced air furnace.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms where carbon monoxide detection is provided in the first room or area served by each main duct leaving the furnace, and the carbon monoxide alarm signals are automatically transmitted to an *approved* location.

915.1.4 Fuel-burning appliances outside of dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located in buildings that contain fuel-burning appliances or fuel-burning fireplaces.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if there are no communicating openings between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms if carbon monoxide detection is provided in one of the following locations:

2.1 In an *approved* location between the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or **classroom; or**

2.2 On the ceiling of the room containing the fuel-burning appliance or fuel-burning fireplace.

915.1.5 Private garages. Carbon monoxide detection shall be provided in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms in buildings with attached private garages.

Exceptions:

1. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where there are no communicating openings between the private garage and the dwelling unit, sleeping unit or classroom.

2. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in dwelling units, sleeping units and classrooms located more than one story above or below a private garage.

3. Carbon monoxide detection shall not be required where the private garage connects to the building through an open-ended corridor.
4. Where carbon monoxide detection is provided in an *approved* location between openings to a private garage and dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms, carbon monoxide detection shall not be required in the dwelling units, sleeping units or classrooms.

915.1.6 Exempt garages. For determining compliance with Section 915.1.5, an open parking garage complying with Section 406.5 of the International Building Code or an enclosed parking garage complying with Section 406.6 of the International Building Code shall not be considered a private garage.

915.2 Locations. Where required by Section 915.1.1, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in the locations specified in Sections 915.2.1 through 915.2.3.

915.2.1 Dwelling units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in dwelling units outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms. Where a fuel-burning appliance is located within a bedroom or its attached bathroom, carbon monoxide detection shall be installed within the bedroom.

915.2.2 Sleeping units. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in sleeping units.

Exception: Carbon monoxide detection shall be allowed to be installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the sleeping unit where the sleeping unit or its attached bathroom does not contain a fuel-burning appliance and is not served by a forced air furnace.

915.2.3 Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide detection shall be installed in classrooms in Group E occupancies. Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that is staffed by school personnel.

Exception: Carbon monoxide alarm signals shall not be required to be automatically transmitted to an on-site location that it staffed by school personnel in Group E occupancies with an occupant load of 30 or less.

915.3 Detection equipment. Carbon monoxide detection required by Sections 915.1 through 915.2.3 shall be provided by carbon monoxide alarms complying with Section 915.4 or with carbon monoxide detection systems complying with Section 915.5.

915.4 Carbon monoxide alarms. Carbon monoxide alarms shall comply with Sections 915.4.1 through 915.4.3.

915.4.1 Power source. Carbon monoxide alarms shall receive their primary power from the building wiring where such wiring is served from a commercial source, and when primary power is interrupted, shall receive power from a battery. Wiring shall be permanent and without a disconnecting switch other than that required for overcurrent protection.

Exception: Where installed in buildings without commercial power, battery-powered carbon monoxide alarms shall be an acceptable alternative.

915.4.2 Listings. Carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034.

915.4.3 Combination alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke alarms shall be listed in accordance with UL 2034 and UL 217.

915.5 Carbon monoxide detection systems. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide alarms and shall comply with Sections 915.5.1 through 915.5.3.

915.5.1 General. Carbon monoxide detection systems shall comply with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be listed in accordance with UL 2075.

915.5.2 Locations. Carbon monoxide detectors shall be installed in the locations specified in Section 915.2. These locations supersede the locations specified in NFPA 720.

915.5.3 Combination detectors. Combination carbon monoxide/smoke detectors installed in carbon monoxide detection systems shall be an acceptable alternative to carbon monoxide detectors, provided they are listed in accordance with UL 2075 and UL 268.

915.6 Maintenance. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detection systems shall be maintained in accordance with NFPA 720. Carbon monoxide alarms and carbon monoxide detectors that become inoperable or begin producing end-of-life signals shall be replaced.

(Revise Chapter 47 as follows)

NFPA 720 – 09 – 12

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 915, 2012 NC Fuel Gas Code, Section 311.4, and 2012 NC Mechanical Code, Section 313.4, Carbon Monoxide Detection.]

1005.1 Minimum required egress width. (120312 Item B-2)

1005.1 Minimum required egress width. The *means of egress* width shall not be less than required by this section. The total width of *means of egress* in inches (mm) shall not be less than the total *occupant load* served by the *means of egress* multiplied by 0.3 inch (7.6 mm) per occupant for stairways and by 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant for other egress components. The width shall not be less than specified elsewhere in this code. Multiple *means of egress* shall be sized such that the loss of any one *means of egress* shall not reduce the available capacity to less than 50 percent of the required capacity. The maximum capacity required from any *story* of a building shall be maintained to the termination of the *means of egress*.

Exceptions:

1. *Means of egress* complying with Section 1028.
2. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches (mm), of *means of egress stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by the *stairway* by a *means of egress* capacity factor of 0.2 inch (5.1 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an *emergency voice/alarm communications system* in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.
3. For other than Group H and I-2 occupancies, the capacity, in inches (mm), of *means of egress* components other than *stairways* shall be calculated by multiplying the *occupant load* served by such components by a *means of egress* capacity factor of 0.15 inch (3.8 mm) per occupant in buildings equipped throughout with an *automatic sprinkler system* installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 or 903.3.1.2 and an *emergency voice/alarm communications system* in accordance with Section 907.5.2.2.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 1005.1.]

2012 NC Fire Code

1008.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. (150310 Item B-18)

1008.1.10 Panic and fire exit hardware. Doors serving a Group H occupancy and doors serving rooms or spaces with an *occupant load* of 50 or more in a Group A or E occupancy shall not be provided with a latch or lock unless it is panic hardware or *fire exit hardware*.

Exception: A main *exit* of a Group A occupancy in compliance with Section 1008.1.9.3, Item 2.

Electrical rooms with equipment rated ~~4,200~~ 800 amperes or more and over 6 feet (1829 mm) wide that contain overcurrent devices, switching devices or control devices with *exit* or *exit access* doors shall be equipped with panic hardware or *fire exit hardware*. The doors shall swing in the direction of egress travel.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is **April 1, 2016**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 1008.1.10, Panic and fire exit hardware.]

2012 NC Fire Code

1018.6 Corridor continuity. (130311 Item B-12)

1018.6 Corridor continuity. Fire-resistant-rated **corridors** shall be continuous from the point of entry to an exit, and shall not be interrupted by intervening rooms.

Exceptions:

1. Foyers, lobbies or reception rooms constructed as corridors shall not be constructed as intervening rooms.
2. A toilet room as defined by the NC Plumbing Code that meets all of the following requirements may be included as part of the rated corridor enclosure:
 - 2.1. The toilet room shall be separated from the remainder of the building by fire-resistant-rated construction meeting the same requirements as the corridor construction;
 - 2.2. No other rooms open off of the toilet room;
 - 2.3. No gas or electric appliances other than electric hand dryers are located in the toilet room; and
 - 2.4. The toilet room is not used for any other purpose.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Building Code, Section 1018.6]

2012 NC Fire Code

1208.2 Automatic Sprinkler System Exceptions. (140610 Item B-17)

1208.2 Automatic sprinkler system. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall be installed in accordance with Section 903.3.1.1 throughout dry cleaning plants containing Type II, Type III-A or Type III-B dry cleaning systems.

Exceptions:

1. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in Type III-A dry cleaning plants where the aggregate quantity of Class III-A solvent in dry cleaning machines and storage does not exceed 330 gallons (1250 L) and dry cleaning machines are equipped with a feature that will accomplish any one of the following:

1.1. Prevent oxygen concentrations from reaching 8 percent or more by volume.

1.2. Keep the temperature of the solvent at least 30°F (16.7°C) below the flash point.

1.3. Maintain the solvent vapor concentration at a level lower than 25 percent of the lower explosive limit (LEL).

1.4. Utilize equipment *approved* for use in Class I, Division 2 hazardous locations in accordance with NFPA 70.

1.5. Utilize an integrated dry-chemical, clean agent or water-mist automatic fire-extinguishing system designed in accordance with Chapter 9.

2. An *automatic sprinkler system* shall not be required in Type III-B dry cleaning plants where the aggregate quantity of Class III-B solvent in dry cleaning machines and storage does not exceed 3,300 gallons (12 490 L).

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Chapter 17 Fumigation and Thermal Insecticidal Fogging. (140610 Item B-18)

Delete existing Chapter 17 text and replace with the following:

CHAPTER 17 FUMIGATION AND INSECTICIDAL

FOGGINGSECTION 1701 GENERAL

1701.1 Scope. Fumigation and insecticidal fogging operations within buildings, structures and spaces shall comply with this chapter.

1701.2 Permits. Permits shall be required as set forth in Section 105.6.

SECTION 1702 DEFINITIONS

1702.1 Definitions. The following words and terms shall, for the purposes of this chapter and as used elsewhere in this code, have the meanings shown herein.

FUMIGANT. A substance which by itself or in combination with any other substance emits or liberates a gas, fume or vapor utilized for the destruction or control of insects, fungi, vermin, germs, rats or other pests, and shall be distinguished from insecticides and disinfectants which are essentially effective in the solid or liquid phases. Examples are methyl bromide, ethylene dibromide, hydrogen cyanide, carbon disulfide and sulfuryl fluoride.

FUMIGATION. The utilization within an enclosed space of a fumigant in concentrations that are hazardous or acutely toxic to humans.

INSECTICIDAL FOGGING. The utilization of insecticidal liquids passed through fog-generating units where, by means of pressure and turbulence, with or without the application of heat, such liquids are transformed and discharged in the form of fog or mist blown into an area to be treated.

SECTION 1703 FIRE SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

1703.1 General. Buildings, structures and spaces in which fumigation and insecticidal fogging operations are conducted shall comply with the fire protection and safety requirements of Sections 1703.2 through 1703.7.

1703.2 Sources of ignition. Fires, open flames and similar sources of ignition shall be eliminated from the space under fumigation or insecticidal fogging. Heating, where needed, shall be of an *approved* type.

1703.2.1 Electricity. Electricity in any part of the building, structure or space where operation of switches or electrical devices, equipment or systems could serve as a source of ignition shall be shut off.

Exception: Circulating fans that have been specifically designed for utilization in hazardous atmospheres and installed in accordance with NFPA 70.

1703.2.2 Electronic devices. Electronic devices, including portable equipment and cellular phones, shall be shut off. Telephone lines shall be disconnected from telephones.

1703.2.3 Duration. Sources of ignition shall be shut off during the fumigation activity and remain shut off until the ventilation required in Section 1703.6 is completed.

1703.3 Notification. The *fire code official* and fire chief shall be notified in writing not less than 48 hours before the building, structure or space is to be closed in connection with the utilization of any toxic or

flammable fumigant. Notification shall give the location of the enclosed space to be fumigated or fogged, the occupancy, the fumigants or insecticides to be utilized, the person or persons responsible for the operation, and the date and time at which the operation will begin. Written notice of any fumigation or insecticidal fogging operation shall be given to all affected occupants of the building, structure or space in which such operations are to be conducted with sufficient advance notice to allow the occupants to evacuate the building, structure or space. Such notice shall inform the occupants as to the purposes, anticipated duration and hazards associated with the fumigation or **insecticidal** fogging operation.

1703.3.1 Warning signs. *Approved* warning signs indicating the danger, type of chemical involved and necessary precautions shall be posted on all doors and entrances to the affected building, structure or space and upon all gangplanks and ladders from the deck, pier or land to a ship. Such notices shall be printed in red ink on a white background. Letters in the headlines shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) in height and shall state the date and time of the operation, the name and address of the person, the name of the operator in charge, and a warning stating that the affected building, structure or space shall be vacated not less than 1 hour before the operation begins and shall not be reentered until the danger signs have been removed by the proper authorities.

1703.3.2 Breathing apparatus. Persons engaged in the business of fumigation or insecticidal fogging shall maintain and have available *approved* protective breathing apparatus.

1703.3.3 Watch personnel. During the period fumigation is in progress, except where fumigation is conducted in a gas-tight vault or tank, a responsible watchperson shall remain on duty at the entrance or entrances to the enclosed fumigated space until after the fumigation is completed and the building, structure or space is properly ventilated and safe for occupancy. Sufficient watchers shall be provided to prevent persons from entering the enclosed space under fumigation without being observed.

1703.3.4 Evacuation during fumigation. Occupants of the building, structure or space to be fumigated, except the personnel conducting the fumigation, shall be evacuated from such building, structure or space prior to commencing fumigation operations.

1703.3.5 Evacuation during insecticidal fogging operations. Occupants in the building, structure or space to be fogged, except the personnel conducting the insecticidal fogging operations, shall be evacuated from such building, structure or space prior to commencing fogging operations.

1703.4 Insecticidal fogging liquids. Insecticidal fogging liquids with a *flash point* below 100°F (38°C) shall not be utilized.

1703.5 Sealing of buildings, structures and spaces. Paper and other similar materials that do not meet the flame propagation performance criteria of Test Method 1 or Test Method 2, as appropriate, of NFPA 701 shall not be used to wrap or cover a building, structure or space in excess of that required for the sealing of cracks, casements and similar openings.

1703.5.1 Maintenance of openings. All openings to the building, structure or space to be fumigated or fogged shall be kept securely closed during such operation.

1703.6 Venting and cleanup. At the end of the exposure period, fumigators shall safely and properly ventilate the premises and contents; properly dispose of fumigant containers, residues, debris and other materials used for such fumigation; and clear obstructions from gas-fired appliance vents.

1703.7 Flammable fumigants restricted. The use of carbon disulfide and hydrogen cyanide shall be restricted to agricultural fumigation.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

2206.2.3 Above-ground tanks located outside, above grade. (130910 Item B-9)

Add Exception # 5 to 2206.2.3:

2206.2.3 Above-ground tanks located outside, above grade. Above-ground tanks shall not be used for the storage of Class I, II, or IIIA liquid motor fuels except as provided by this section.

No change to Exceptions 1-4

1. Above-ground tanks used for outside, above-grade storage of Class I liquids shall be *listed and labeled* as protected above-ground tanks and be in accordance with Chapter 34. Such tanks shall be located in accordance with Table 2206.2.3.
2. Above-ground tanks used for above-grade storage of Class II or IIIA liquids are allowed to be protected above-ground tanks or, when *approved* by the *fire code official*, other above-ground tanks that comply with Chapter 34. Tank locations shall be in accordance with Table 2206.2.3.
3. Tanks containing fuels shall not exceed 12,000 gallons (45 420 L) in individual capacity or 48,000 gallons (181 680 L) in aggregate capacity. Installations with the maximum allowable aggregate capacity shall be separated from other such installations by not less than 100 feet (30 480 mm).
4. Tanks located at farms, construction projects, or rural areas shall comply with Section 3406.2.
5. Fleet service stations. Listed UL 142 above ground storage tanks with spill control, 1,100 gallons (4164L) or less in capacity, shall be permitted to be used to store Class I liquids at fleet service stations.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

3405.5 Alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids. (120312 Item B-1)

3405.5 Alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids. The use of wall-mounted dispensers containing alcohol-based hand rubs classified as Class I or II liquids shall be in accordance with all of the following:

(no changes to items 1-4 and 6-7)

5. Dispensers shall not release their contents except when the dispenser is manually activated.

Exception: Facilities shall be permitted to install and use automatically activated “touch free” alcohol-based hand rub dispensing devices with the following requirements:

1. The facility or persons responsible for the dispensers shall test the dispensers each time a new refill is installed in accordance with the manufacturer’s care and use instructions.

2. Dispensers shall be designed and must operate in a manner that ensures accidental or malicious activations of the dispensing device are minimized. At a minimum, all devices subject to or used in accordance with this section shall have the following safety features:

2.1 Any activations of the dispenser shall occur when an object is placed within 4 inches of the sensing device.

2.2 The dispenser shall not dispense more than the amount required for hand hygiene consistent with the label instructions as regulated by the United States Food and Drug Administration (US FDA).

2.3 An object placed within the activation zone and left in place shall cause only one activation.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14)

4504.1 General. *Piers, marinas, and wharves with facilities for mooring or servicing five or more vessels, and marine motor fuel-dispensing facilities shall be equipped with fire protection equipment in accordance with Sections 4504.2 through 4504.6.*

Exception: Private Waterfront Structures

Section 202 General Definitions

[B] PRIVATE WATERFRONT STRUCTURES. *A dock, pier, bulkhead, or associated structure not open to the general public and with no more than ten total boat slips and no more than ten owners.*

[B] PUBLIC WATERFRONT STRUCTURES. *A dock, pier, bulkhead, or associated structure located on multi-family residential property (greater than ten dwelling units), public property or commercial property.*

The effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fire Code

Chapter 47 Referenced Standards. (140610 Item B-19)

NFPA National Fire Protection Association
 1 Batterymarch Park
 Quincy, MA 02169-7471

Standard Reference Number	Title	Referenced in code section number
10- 07 <u>13</u>	Portable Fire Extinguishers	<u><i>No Change to Section numbers</i></u>
11- 05 <u>10</u>	Low-, Medium- and High-expansion foam	
12- 05 <u>11</u>	Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems	
12A- 04 <u>09</u>	Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems	
13- 07 <u>13</u>	Installation of Sprinkler Systems	
13D- 07 <u>13</u>	Installation of Sprinkler Systems in One-and-Two family dwellings and Manufactured Homes	
13R- 07 <u>13</u>	Installation of Sprinkler Systems in Residential Occupancies up to and Including Four Stories in Height.	
14- 07 <u>13</u>	Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems	
15- 07 <u>12</u>	Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection	
16- 07 <u>11</u>	Installation of Foam-water Sprinkler and Foam-water Spray Systems	
17- 02 <u>13</u>	Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems	
17A- 02 <u>13</u>	Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems	
20- 07 <u>13</u>	Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection	
22- 03 <u>13</u>	Water Tanks for Private Fire Protection	
24- 07 <u>13</u>	Installation of Private Fire Service Mains and Their Appurtenances	
25- 08 <u>14</u>	Inspection Testing and Maintenance of Water-based Fire Protection Systems	
30- 08 <u>12</u>	Flammable and Combustible Liquids Code	
30A- 08 <u>12</u>	Code for Motor Fuel-dispensing Facilities and Repair Garages	
30B- 07 <u>11</u>	Manufacture and Storage of Aerosol Products	
31- 06 <u>11</u>	Installation of Oil-burning Equipment	
32- 07 <u>11</u>	Dry Cleaning Plants	
33- 07 <u>11</u>	Spray Application Using Flammable or Combustible Materials	
34- 07 <u>11</u>	Dipping and Coating Processes Using Flammable or Combustible Liquids	
35- 05 <u>11</u>	Manufacture of Organic Coatings	
40- 07 <u>11</u>	Storage and Handling of Cellulose Nitrate Film	
51 - 07 <u>13</u>	Design and Installation of Oxygen-fuel Gas Systems for Welding, Cutting and Allied Processes	
51A- 06 <u>12</u>	Acetylene Cylinder Charging Plants	
52- 06 <u>13</u>	Vehicular Fuel System Code	
55- 05 <u>13</u>	Standard for the Storage, Use and Handling of Compressed Gases and Cryogenic Fluids in Portable and Stationary Containers Cylinders and Tanks	
58- 08 <u>14</u>	Liquefied Petroleum Gas Code	
59A- 06 <u>13</u>	Production, Storage and Handling of Liquefied Natural Gas (LNG)	
61- 08 <u>13</u>	Prevention of Fires and Dust Explosions in Agricultural and Food Processing Facilities	
69- 08 <u>14</u>	Explosion Prevention Systems	
70- 08 <u>14</u>	National Electrical Code	
72- 07 <u>13</u>	National Fire Alarm <u>and Signaling</u> Code	
80- 07 <u>13</u>	Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives	
85- 07 <u>11</u>	Boiler and Combustion System Hazards Code	
86- 07 <u>11</u>	Ovens and Furnaces	
92B- 05 <u>12</u>	Smoke Management Systems in Malls, Atria and Large Spaces	
99- 05 <u>12</u>	Health Care Facilities	

101-06 <u>12</u>	Life Safety Code
105-07- <u>10</u>	Installation of Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives
110 -05- <u>10</u>	Emergency and Standby Power Systems
111-05- <u>10</u>	Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems
120-04- <u>10</u>	Coal Preparation Plants
160-06 <u>11</u>	Flame Effects Before an Audience
170-06 <u>12</u>	Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols
211-06 <u>13</u>	Chimneys, Fireplaces, Vents and Solid Fuel-burning Appliances
241-04 <u>13</u>	Safeguarding Construction, Alteration and Demolition Operations
253-06 <u>11</u>	Standard Test for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Heat Energy Source
260-03- <u>13</u>	Method of Tests and Classification System for Cigarette Ignition Resistance of Components of Upholstered Furniture
261-03 <u>13</u>	Method of Test for Determining Resistance of Mock-up Upholstered Furniture Material Assemblies to Ignition by Smoldering Cigarettes
265-07 <u>11</u>	Method of Fire Tests for Evaluating Room Fire Growth Contribution of Textile Wall Coverings in Full Height Panels and Walls
286-06- <u>11</u>	Standard Method of Fire Tests for Evaluating Contribution of Wall and Ceiling Interior Finish to Room Fire Growth
303-06- <u>11</u>	Fire Protection Standard for Marinas and Boatyards
385-07- <u>12</u>	Tank Vehicles for Flammable and Combustible Liquids
407-07- <u>12</u>	Aircraft Fuel Servicing
409-04- <u>11</u>	Aircraft Hangars
430-04	Storage of Liquid and Solid Oxidizers
484-06- <u>12</u>	Combustible Metals
490-02	Storage of Ammonium Nitrate
495-06- <u>13</u>	Explosive Materials Code
498-06- <u>13</u>	Safe Havens and Interchange Lots for Vehicles Transporting Explosives
505-06- <u>13</u>	Powered Industrial Trucks, Including Type Designations, Areas of Use, Maintenance and Operation
654-06- <u>13</u>	Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids
655-07- <u>12</u>	Prevention of Sulfur Fires and Explosions
664-07 <u>12</u>	Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities
701-04- <u>10</u>	Methods of Fire Tests for Flame- propagation of Textiles and Films
703-06- <u>12</u>	Fire Retardant Impregnated Wood and Fire Retardant Coatings for Building Materials
704-07- <u>12</u>	Identification of the Hazards of Materials for Emergency Response
750-06- <u>10</u>	Water Mist Fire Protection Systems
1122-08- <u>13</u>	Model Rocketry
1123-40 <u>14</u>	Fireworks Display
1124-06- <u>13</u>	Manufacture, Transportation, Storage and Retail Sale of Fireworks and Pyrotechnic Articles
1125-07 <u>12</u>	Manufacture of Model Rocket and High Power Rocket Motors
1126-40 <u>11</u>	Use of Pyrotechnics Before a Proximate Audience
1127-08 <u>13</u>	High Power Rocketry
1142-07- <u>12</u>	Water Supply for Suburban and Rural Fire Fighting
2001-08 <u>12</u>	Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fuel Gas Code

2012 NC Fuel Gas Code

310.1.1 Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST). (120312 Item B-3)

310.1.1, Chapter 8 CSST. (141209 Item B-11)

310.1.1 CSST. Corrugated stainless steel tubing (CSST) gas *pip*ing systems shall be bonded to the electrical service grounding electrode system ~~at the point where the gas service enters the building.~~ The bonding jumper shall be not smaller than 6 AWG copper wire or equivalent.

CSST with an arc-resistant jacket listed by an *approved* agency for installation without the direct bonding, as prescribed in this section, shall be installed in accordance with Section 310.1 and the manufacturer's installation instructions.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is **January 1, 2016.**

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

311 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-3a)

SECTION 311 CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

311.1 Carbon monoxide alarms. In new construction, one-and two-family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an approved carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

311.2 Where required-existing dwellings. In existing dwellings, where interior alterations, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 311.1.

Exception: Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fire appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

311.3 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in, or hard-wired alarms are acceptable for use.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Fuel Gas Code

403.10.1 Pipe joints. (131210 Item B-4)

403.10.1 Pipe joints. Pipe joints shall be threaded, flanged, brazed, ~~or~~ welded, or made with press-connect fittings complying with ANSI LC-4. Where nonferrous pipe is brazed, the brazing materials shall have a melting point in excess of 1,000°F (538°C). Brazing alloys shall not contain more than 0.05-percent phosphorous.

Amend Chapter 8 ANSI Standard reference as follows:

ANSI LC-4- ~~07~~ 2012/CSA-6.32-2012 Press-connect ~~Copper and Copper Alloy~~ Metallic Fittings for Use In Fuel Gas Distribution Systems.....403.10.1, 403.10.2

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

2012 NC Mechanical Code

312.1 Load calculations. (150609 Item B-5)

312.1 Load calculations. Heating and cooling system design loads for the purpose of sizing systems, appliances and *equipment* shall be determined in accordance with the procedures described in the ASHRAE/ACCA Standard 183. Alternatively, design loads shall be determined by an *approved* equivalent computation procedure, using the design parameters specified in Chapter 3 of the *International Energy Conservation Code*.

For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, heating and cooling equipment shall be sized in accordance with ACCA Manual S based on building loads calculated in accordance with ACCA Manual J, or other approved heating and cooling calculation methodologies.

For permitting, inspections, certificate of compliance or certificate of occupancy, verification of Calculations for HVAC Systems - ACCA Manual D, ACCA Manual J nor ACCA Manual S calculation submittals and review shall not be required.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

313 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-3b)

SECTION 313 CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

313.1 Carbon monoxide alarms. In new construction, one-and two-family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an approved carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

313.2 Where required-existing dwellings. In existing dwellings, where interior alterations, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 313.1.

Exception: Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fire appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

313.3 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in, or hard-wired alarms are acceptable for use.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

TABLE 403.3 MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES. (101214 Item B-2)

TABLE 403.3

MINIMUM VENTILATION RATES

(Under Education, delete footnote "g" from Art Classroom and Science Laboratories.)

The delayed effective date of this Rule is September 1, 2011.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

403.3.1.3 Zone outdoor airflow. (101214 Item B-3)

(Add the following to paragraph 403.3.1.3)

Exception: K-12 schools shall be exempt from use of this effectiveness factor

$$\underline{(V_{oz}=V_{bz})}$$

The delayed effective date of this Rule is September 1, 2011.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

403.3.2.3.4 Outdoor air intake flow rate. (101214 Item B-4)

(Add the following to paragraph 403.3.2.3.4)

Exception: K-12 schools shall be exempt from use of this efficiency factor ($V_{ot}=V_{ou}$)

The delayed effective date of this Rule is September 1, 2011.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

505.2 Makeup air required. (131210 Item B-6)

505.2 Makeup air required. Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m³/s) shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate that is in excess of 400 cubic feet per minute (0.19 m³/s). Such makeup air systems shall be equipped with a means of closure and shall be automatically controlled to start and operate simultaneously with the exhaust system.

Exception: Where all appliances in the house are direct-vent, power-vent, unvented, or electric, makeup air shall be provided where exhaust fans are capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute (0.28 m³/s). Exhaust hood systems capable of exhausting more than 600 cubic feet per minute shall be provided with makeup air at a rate approximately equal to the exhaust air rate that is in excess of 600 cubic feet per minute.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

603.4 Duct Construction. (120611 Item B-22)

TABLE 603.4

DUCT CONSTRUCTION MINIMUM SHEET METAL THICKNESS FOR SINGLE DWELLING UNITS

DUCT SIZE	GALVANIZED		ALUMINUM
	Minimum thickness (in.)	Equivalent galvanized gage no.	<u>Brown & Sharpe gage</u> ALUMINUM MINIMUM THICKNESS (in.)
Round ducts and Enclosed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	<u>0.013</u> 0.0157	<u>30</u> 28	<u>26</u> 0.0175
Over 14" 16 and 18 inches	<u>0.016</u> 0.0187	<u>28</u> 26	<u>24</u> 0.018
20 inches and over	0.0236	24	0.023
Exposed rectangular ducts			
14 inches or less	<u>0.016</u> 0.0157	28	<u>24</u> 0.0175
Over 14 inches ^a	<u>0.019</u> 0.0187	26	<u>22</u> 0.018

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 inch water gage = 249 Pa.

a. ~~For duct gages and reinforcement requirements at static pressure of ½ inch, 1 inch and 2 inch w.g., SMACNA HVAC Duct Construction Standards, Tables 2-1, 2-2, and 2-3, shall apply.~~

The effective date of this Temporary Rule is October 1, 2012.

The effective date of this Permanent Rule is **September 1, 2013**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

1202.5 Pipe Fittings. (120611 Item B-3)

Table 1202.5 Hydronic Pipe Fittings

Material	Standard
Copper & Copper Alloy	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.23; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.29; <u>ASME B16.51</u>

Chapter 15 REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASME

B16.51 – 2011 Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings Table
1202.5

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

1203.8 Copper and copper alloy tubing. (120611 Item B-4)

1203.8 Copper and copper alloy tubing. Joints between copper or copper-alloy tubing or fittings shall be brazed, mechanical, press connect or soldered joints conforming to Section 1203.3, flared joints conforming to Section 1203.8.1 or push-fit joints conforming to Section 1203.8.2.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Mechanical Code

1203.3.9 Press connect joints. (120611 Item B-5)

1203.3.9 Press connect joints. Press connect joints shall be installed in accordance with the **manufacturer's instructions**. Press-connect joints shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table **1202.5**.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

2012 NC Plumbing Code

202 General definitions. (151215 Item B-5)

~~**INDIRECT WASTE RECEPTOR.** A plumbing fixture designed to collect and dispose of liquid waste from other plumbing fixtures, plumbing equipment or appliances that are required to discharge to the drainage system through an air gap. The following types of fixtures fall within the classification of indirect liquid waste receptors: floor sinks, mop receptors, service sinks and standpipe drains with integral air gaps.~~

WASTE RECEPTOR. A floor sink, standpipe, hub drain or a floor drain that receives the discharge of one or more indirect waste pipes.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

SECTION 202 GENERAL DEFINITIONS

LEAD-FREE PIPE AND FITTINGS. Containing not more than a weighted average of ~~8.0~~ 0.25-percent lead when used with respect to the wetted surfaces of pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings, and fixtures.

WEIGHTED AVERAGE LEAD CONTENT. The weighted average lead content of a pipe, pipe fitting, plumbing fitting, or fixture shall be calculated by using the following formula: For each wetted component, the percentage of lead in the component shall be multiplied by the ratio of the wetted surface area of that component to the total wetted surface area of the entire product to arrive at the weighted percentage of lead of the component. The weighted percentage of lead of each wetted component shall be added together, and the sum of these wetted percentages shall constitute the weighted average lead content of the product. For lead content of materials that are provided as a range, the maximum content of the range shall be used.

605.2 Lead content of water supply pipe and fittings. Pipe and pipe fittings, including valves and faucets, utilized in the water supply system shall have a maximum weighted average of ~~8~~ 0.25-percent lead content when used with respect to the wetted surfaces of pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings, and fixtures.

Exceptions:

1. Pipes, pipe fittings, plumbing fittings, or fixtures, including backflow preventers, that are used exclusively for non-potable services such as manufacturing, industrial processing, irrigation, outdoor watering, or any other uses where the water is not anticipated to be used for human consumption; or
2. Toilets, bidets, urinals, fill valves, flushometer valves, tub fillers, shower valves, service saddles, or water distribution main gate valves that are 2-inches in diameter or larger.

The effective date of this Rule is **June 1, 2014**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

307.2.1.1, 701.7, 715.6, 802.1.5 Condensate drains. (150915 Item B-4)

307.2.1.1 Condensing furnaces and boilers. Where condensate drains from condensing furnaces or boilers are installed in locations subject to freezing, the condensate drain lines in attics shall be freeze protected in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations

701.7 Connections. Direct connection of a condensate drain, a steam exhaust blow-off or drip pipe shall not be made with the building drainage system.

715.6 Crawl Spaces. All hub drains or floor drains installed in crawl spaces shall be protected from backflow into the building by a check valve or back-water valve installed in the lateral serving the said hub drain or floor drain.

802.1.5 Non-potable clear-water waste. Where devices and equipment such as process tanks, filters, condensate drains, drips and boilers discharge non-potable water to the building drainage system, the discharge shall be through an indirect waste pipe by means of an air break or air gap.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

SECTION 315 CARBON MONOXIDE ALARMS

315.1 Carbon monoxide alarms. In new construction, one-and two-family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an approved carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

315.2 Where required-existing dwellings. In existing dwellings, where interior alterations, repairs, or additions requiring a building permit occur, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 315.1.

Exception: Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fire appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

315.3 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in, or hard-wired alarms are acceptable for use.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

403.1.1 Fixture calculations. (131210 Item B-3)

403.1.1 Fixture calculations. To determine the occupant load of each sex, the total occupant load shall be divided in half. To determine the required number of fixtures, the fixture ratio or ratios for each fixture type shall be applied to the occupant load of each sex in accordance with Table 403.1. Fractional numbers resulting from applying the fixture ratios of Table 403.1 shall be rounded up to the next whole number. For calculations involving multiple *occupancies*, such fractional numbers for each *occupancy* shall first be summed and then rounded up to the next whole number.

Exceptions:

1. The total occupant load shall not be required to be divided in half where *approved* statistical data indicates a distribution of the sexes of other than 50 percent of each sex.
2. In buildings that contain dwellings or sleeping units that have a pool dedicated to the residents, a percentage reduction of the total required fixtures provided for a pool and pool deck without bleachers and grandstands may be taken equal to the percentage of total residential units whose entries fall within 500 feet of the pool deck.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

403.2 Separate facilities. (110308 Item B-4)

403.2 Separate facilities. Where plumbing fixtures are required, separate facilities shall be provided for each sex.

Exceptions:

1. Separate facilities shall not be required for dwelling units and sleeping units.
2. Separate facilities shall not be required in structures or tenant spaces with a total occupant load, including both employees and customers, of 25 or less.
3. Separate facilities shall not be required in mercantile occupancies in which the maximum occupant load is 100 or less.
4. Except as provided in Section 405.3.2.
5. Where the code requires only one toilet facility for each sex, two unisex facilities may be substituted for separate sex facilities.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

403.6.3 Picnic shelters. (130311 Item B-14)

403.6.3 Picnic shelters. Where picnic shelters that are less than 750-square feet (70-square meters) in aggregate area are installed in a community recreation area, and parking is neither provided nor required, public toilet facilities are not required. The travel distance to the dwellings served shall not be limited.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

405.3.1 Water closets, urinals, lavatories and bidets. (121210 Item B-4)

405.3.1 Water closets, urinals, lavatories and bidets. A water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet shall not be set closer than 15 inches (381 mm) from its center to any side wall, partition, vanity or other obstruction, or closer than 30 inches (762 mm) center-to-center between adjacent fixtures. There shall be at least a 21-inch (533 mm) clearance in front of the water closet, urinal, lavatory or bidet to any wall, fixture or door. Water closet compartments shall not be less than 30 inches (762 mm) wide and 60 inches (152 mm) deep.

Exception: For one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses, see the *North Carolina Residential Code, Figure R307.1 for minimum fixture clearances.*

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Residential Code, Part VII Abridged.]

2012 NC Plumbing Code

416.5 Tempered water for public hand-washing facilities. (151215 Item B-1)

416.5 Tempered water for public hand-washing facilities. Deleted. When hot water is provided to a public hand-washing facility, such water shall be tempered water delivered through an **approved** water-temperature limiting device that conforms to ASSE 1070 or CSA B125.3.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

417.1 Prefabricated showers and shower compartments. (130611 Item B-1)

417.1 Approval. Prefabricated showers and shower compartments shall conform to ~~ANSI Z124.2~~ ANSI Z124.1.2, ASME A112.19.9M or CSA B45.5. Shower valves for individual showers shall conform to the requirements of Section 424.3.

[STAFF NOTE: Correlation changes to Table 417.4 and Chapter 13 listed below.]

**TABLE 417.4
PREFABRICATED SHOWER
RECEPTOR STANDARDS MATERIALS STANDARDS**

Plastic shower receptors and shower stalls ~~ANSI Z124.2~~ ANSI Z124.1.2

Chapter 13

ANSI

American National Standards Institute
25 West 43rd Street, Fourth Floor
New York, NY 10036

Standard Reference Number	Title	Referenced in Code Section Number
Z124.2 <u>Z124.1.2</u> —95	Plastic Shower Receptors and Shower Stalls	417.1

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

417.4 Shower compartments. (140311 Item B-8)

417.4 Shower compartments. Shower compartments shall conform to Table 417.4 and shall have approved shower pan material or the equivalent thereof as determined by the plumbing official. The pan shall turn up on three sides at least 2 inches (51 mm) above the finished curb level. The remaining side shall wrap over the curb. Shower drains shall be constructed with a clamping device so that the pan may be securely fastened to the shower drain thereby making a watertight joint. Shower drains shall have an approved weephole device system to ensure constant drainage of water from the shower pan to the sanitary drainage system. There shall be a watertight joint between the shower and drain and trap. Shower receptacle waste outlets shall be not less than 2 inches (51 mm) and shall have a removable strainer.

Exceptions:

1. Shower compartments with prefabricated receptors conforming to the standards listed in Table 417.4.
2. Where load-bearing, bonded, waterproof membranes meeting ANSI A118.10 are used, integrated bonding flange drains shall be approved. Clamping devices and weepholes are not required where shower drains include an integrated bonding flange. Manufacturer's installation instructions shall be followed to achieve a watertight seal between the bonded waterproof membrane and the integrated bonding flange drain. Integrated bonding flange drains shall conform to ASME A112.6.3, ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, or CSA B79.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

***417.5.2.6 Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials.
(140909 Item B-4)***

417.5.2.6 Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials. Liquid-type, trowel-applied, load-bearing, bonded waterproof materials shall meet the requirements of ANSI A118.10 and shall be applied in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

504.6 Requirements for discharge piping. (130311 Item B-5)

504.6 Requirements for discharge piping. The discharge piping serving a pressure relief valve, temperature relief valve or combination thereof shall:

1. Not be directly connected to the drainage system.

~~2.1. Discharge through an air gap located~~ in the same room as the water heater, either on the floor, into an indirect waste receptor or ~~outdoors~~ into a water heater pan.

~~2.2. Discharge through an air gap or air gap fitting to a remote termination point that is observable by the building occupants.~~

3. Not be smaller than the diameter of the outlet of the valve served and shall discharge full size to the *air gap*.

4. Serve a single relief device and shall not connect to piping serving any other relief device or equipment.

5. Discharge to the floor, to the pan serving the water heater or storage tank, to a waste receptor or to the outdoors.

6. Discharge in a manner that does not cause personal injury or structural damage.

~~7. Discharge to a termination point that is readily observable by the building occupants Deleted.~~

8. Not be trapped.

9. Be installed so as to flow by gravity.

10. Not terminate more than 6 inches (152 mm) above the floor or waste receptor.

11. Not have a threaded connection at the end of such piping.

12. Not have valves or tee fittings.

13. Be constructed of those materials listed in Section 605.4 or materials tested, rated and *approved* for such use in accordance with ASME A112.4.1.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

605.4 Water distribution pipe. (150609 Item B-1)

605.4 Water distribution pipe. Water distribution pipe shall conform to NSF 61 and shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.4. ~~All~~ Hot water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a minimum pressure rating of 100 psi (690 kPa) at 180°F (82°C). Cold water distribution pipe and tubing shall have a minimum pressure rating of 160 psi (1100 kPa) at 73.4°F (23°C).

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code
605.5 Pipe Fittings. (120611 Item B-6)

Table 605.5 Pipe Fittings

Materials	Standards
Copper and Copper Alloys	ASME B16.15; ASME B16.18; ASME B16.22; ASME B16.23; ASME B16.26; ASME B16.29; <u>ASME B16.51</u>

Chapter 13 REFERENCED STANDARDS

ASME

B16.51 – 2011 Copper and Copper Alloy Press-Connect Pressure Fittings Table
605.5

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

605.15.5 Press Connect Joints. (120611 Item B-7)

605.15.5 Press Connect Joints. Press connect joints shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Press-connect joints shall conform to one of the standards listed in Table 605.5.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

706.4 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends. (140610 Item B-8)

706.4 Heel- or side-inlet quarter bends. ~~Heel inlet quarter bends shall be an acceptable means of connection, except where the quarter bend serves a water closet. A low heel inlet shall not be used as a wet-vented connection. Side inlet quarter bends shall be an acceptable means of connection for drainage, wet venting and *stack* venting arrangements. Deleted.~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

715.1 Sewage Backflow. (141209 Item B-5)

715.1 Sewage backflow. ~~Where the flood level rims of plumbing fixtures are~~ Where plumbing fixtures are installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation below the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the *public sewer*, such fixtures shall be protected by a backwater valve installed in the *building drain, branch* of the *building drain* or horizontal *branch* serving such fixtures. ~~Plumbing fixtures having flood level rims above the~~ Plumbing fixtures installed on a floor with a finished floor elevation above the elevation of the manhole cover of the next upstream manhole in the *public sewer* shall not discharge through a backwater valve.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Plumbing Code

Appendix C-1, Rainwater Collection and Distribution Systems. (101214 Item B-10)

See attached document.

This Rule will be an option to the 2012 NC Plumbing Code, Appendix C-1 and will be incorporated into the next Edition.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

APPENDIX C-1

RAINWATER COLLECTION AND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEMS

The provisions contained in this appendix are reproduced from the International Green Construction Code, Section 707 and are adopted as part of this code.

C1-101.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall govern the construction, installation, alteration, and repair of rainwater collection and conveyance systems.

C1-101.2 Permits. Deleted.

C1-101.3 Potable water connections. Where a *potable* system is connected to a *rainwater collection and conveyance system*, the *potable* water supply shall be protected against backflow in accordance with Section 608 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.4 Non-Potable water connections. Where *non-potable* water from two or more different sources is combined in a single system, the system shall comply with the most stringent of the requirements of this code that are applicable to such sources.

C1-101.5 Installation. Except as provided for in this section, all systems shall be installed in compliance with the provisions of the *International Plumbing Code* and manufacturer's instructions.

C1-101.6 Applications. Untreated *rainwater* shall be utilized in accordance with Section C1-101.6.1. Treated *rainwater* shall be utilized in accordance with Section C1-101.6.2.

C1-101.6.1 Examples of Acceptable Uses without Treatment.

1. Outdoor Irrigation
2. Decorative Fountains
3. Yard Hydrants
4. Industrial Processes (eg. Dust Control, Indoor Hose Bibs Spray)
5. Vehicle Washing
6. Outdoor Hose Bibs (not routed through building wall)

C1-101.6.2 Examples of Acceptable Uses with Disinfection and Filtration.

1. Toilet Flushing
2. Urinal Flushing
3. Evaporative Cooling Tower Make-up
4. Trap Primers
5. Fire Suppression Systems
6. Clothes Washers
7. Outdoor Pools and Spas
8. Hose Bibs – Residential

C1-101.7 Approved components and materials. Piping, plumbing components, and materials used in the collection and conveyance systems shall be manufactured of material *approved* for the intended application and compatible with any disinfection and treatment systems used and shall be in compliance with the provisions of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.8 Insect and vermin control. Inlets and vents to the system shall be protected to prevent the entrance of insects and vermin into *storage tanks* and piping systems. Screens installed on vent pipes, inlets, and overflow pipes shall have an aperture of not greater than 1/16 inch and shall be close-fitting or other *approved methods*. Screen materials shall be compatible with contacting system components and shall not accelerate corrosion of system components.

C1-101.9 Drainage. Water drained from first flush diverters or debris excluders shall not be drained to the sanitary sewer. Such water shall be diverted from the *storage tank* and **discharged** in a location that will not cause erosion or damage to property. *Roof washers* and debris excluders shall be provided with an automatic means of self draining between rain events, and shall not drain onto roof surfaces.

C1-101.10 Freeze protection. Where sustained freezing temperatures occur, provisions shall be made to keep *storage tanks* and the related piping from freezing.

C1-101.11 Trenching requirements. All water service piping, including piping containing *rainwater*, shall be separated from the *building sewer* by 5 feet (1524 mm) of undisturbed or compacted earth. Water service pipes, *potable* and *non-potable*, shall not be located in, under or above cesspools, septic tanks, septic tank drainage fields or seepage pits. Buried *rainwater* collection and *distribution piping* shall comply with the requirements of Section 306 of the *International Plumbing Code* for support, trenching, bedding, backfilling, and tunneling.

Exceptions:

1. The required separation distance shall not apply where the bottom of the water service pipe within 5 feet (1524 mm) of the sewer is a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) above the top of the highest point of the sewer and the pipe materials shall comply with the *International Plumbing Code* for such applications.
2. Water service pipe is permitted to be located in the same trench with a *building sewer*, provided such sewer is constructed of materials that comply with the *International Plumbing Code* for such installations.
3. The required separation distance shall not apply where a *potable* or *non-potable* water service pipe crosses a sewer pipe provided the water service pipe is sleeved to at least 5 feet (1524 mm) horizontally from the sewer pipe centerline on both sides of such crossing with pipe materials that comply with the *International Plumbing Code* for such applications.
4. Deleted.

C1-101.12 Rainwater catchment and collection systems. The design of *rainwater collection and conveyance systems* shall conform to accepted engineering practice.

707.12.1 Collection surface. *Rainwater* shall be collected only from above-ground impervious roofing surfaces. Collection of water from other surfaces shall be prohibited except where the water is used exclusively for acceptable uses without treatment listed in Section C1-101.6.1, or where additional appropriate treatment is designed by a registered design professional.

707.12.1.1 Potable water applications. Deleted.

C1-101.12.2 Debris excluders. Downspouts and leaders shall be equipped with a debris excluder or equivalent device to prevent the contamination of collected *rainwater* with leaves, sticks, pine needles and other undesirable material.

C1-101.12.3 Roof gutters and downspouts. Gutters and downspouts shall be constructed of materials compatible in accordance with Chapter 11 of the *International Plumbing Code*. Joints shall be sealed against leakage.

C1-101.12.3.1 Slope. Roof gutters, leaders, and *rainwater* collection piping shall slope continuously toward collection inlets and shall be free of leaks. Gutters and downspouts shall have a slope of not less than 1/8 inch per foot along their entire length, and shall not permit the collection or pooling of water at any point.

Exception. Deleted.

C1-101.12.3.2 Size. Gutters and downspouts shall be installed and sized in accordance with Section 1106.6 of the *International Plumbing Code* and local rainfall rates.

C1-101.12.3.3 Cleanouts. Cleanouts shall be provided in the water conveyance system so as to allow access to all filters, flushes, pipes and downspouts.

C1-101.12.4 Collection pipe materials. In *buildings* where *rainwater collection and conveyance systems* are installed, drainage piping *approved* for use within plumbing drainage systems shall be utilized to collect *rainwater* and convey it to the *storage tank*. Vent piping *approved* for use within plumbing venting systems shall be utilized for all vents within the *rainwater* system. Drains to a storm water discharge shall use *approved* waste piping.

C1-101.12.4.1 Joints. Collection piping conveying *rainwater* shall utilize joints *approved* for use with the *distribution piping* and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.12.4.2 Size. Collection piping conveying *rainwater* from collection surfaces shall be sized in accordance with local Chapter 11 of the *International Plumbing Code* and local rainfall rates.

C1-101.12.4.3 Labeling and marking. Additional marking of *rainwater* collection piping shall not be required beyond that required for sanitary drainage, waste, and vent piping by the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.12.5 Filtration. Collected *rainwater* shall be filtered to the level required for the intended end use. Filters shall be accessible for inspection and maintenance.

C1-101.12.6 Disinfection. Where the intended application and initial quality of the collected *rainwater* requires disinfection or other treatment or both, as determined by a registered design professional, the collected *rainwater* shall be treated as needed to ensure that the required water quality is delivered at the point of use.

C1-101.12.7 Storage tank. The design of the *storage tank* shall be in accordance with Sections C1-101.12.7.1 through C1-101.12.7.11.

C1-101.12.7.1 Location. *Storage tanks* shall be permitted to be installed either above or below grade. Above grade *storage tanks* shall be constructed using opaque, UV resistant materials to prevent algae growth. *Storage tanks* and their manholes shall not be located directly under any soil or waste piping or any source of contamination. *Rainwater storage tanks* shall be located with a minimum horizontal distance between various elements as indicated in Table C1-101.12.7.1.

**TABLE C1-101.12.7.1
LOCATION OF RAINWATER STORAGE TANKS**

Element	Minimum Horizontal Distance from Storage Tank (feet)
Lot line adjoining private lots	5
Seepage pits	5
Septic tanks	5

C1-101.12.7.2 Materials. Where water is collected onsite, it shall be collected in an *approved* tank constructed of durable, nonabsorbent and corrosion-resistant materials. *Storage tanks* shall be constructed of materials compatible with the type of disinfection system used to treat water upstream of the tank and used to maintain water quality within the tank.

C1-101.12.7.2.1 Wooden tanks. Wooden *storage tanks* shall be provided with a flexible tank liner.

C1-101.12.7.3 Foundation and supports. *Storage tanks* shall be supported on a firm base capable of withstanding the storage tank's weight when filled to capacity. Where earthquake loads are applicable, above-ground collection tank supports shall be designed and installed for the seismic forces in accordance with the *International Building Code*.

C1-101.12.7.3.1 Ballast. Where the soil can become saturated, an underground *storage tank* shall be ballasted, or otherwise secured, to prevent the tank from floating out of the ground when empty. The combined weight of the tank and hold down ballast shall meet or exceed the buoyancy force of the tank. Where the installation requires a foundation, the foundation shall be flat and shall be designed to support the *storage tank* weight when full, consistent with bearing capability of adjacent soil.

C1-101.12.7.3.2 Structural support. When installed below grade, *storage tank* installations shall be designed to withstand earth and surface structural loads without damage and with minimal deformation when filled with water or empty.

C1-101.12.7.4 Makeup water. Where an uninterrupted supply is required for the intended application, *potable* or municipally supplied reclaimed or recycled water shall be provided as a source of makeup water for the *storage tank*. The *potable* or reclaimed or recycled water supply shall be protected against backflow by means of an air gap not less than 4 inches (102 mm) above the overflow or an *approved* backflow device in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*. There shall be a full-open valve located on the makeup water supply line.

C1-101.12.7.5 Overflow. The *storage tank* shall be equipped with an overflow pipe having the same or larger area as the sum of the areas of all tank inlet pipes. The overflow pipe shall be protected from insects and vermin and shall be discharged in a manner consistent with storm water runoff requirements of the *jurisdiction* and at a sufficient distance from the tank to avoid damaging the tank-foundation. The overflow drain shall not be equipped with a shutoff valve.

C1-101.12.7.6 Access. A minimum of one access opening shall be provided to allow inspection and cleaning of the tank interior. All access openings to *storage tanks* and other vessels shall have an *approved* locking device or shall otherwise be protected from unauthorized access. Below grade *storage tanks*, located outside of the *building*, shall be provided with either an access extending above grade, a manhole not less than 24 inches (610 mm) square or a manhole with an inside diameter of not less than 24 inches (610 mm). Finish grade shall be sloped away from the manhole to divert surface water from the manhole.

Exception: *Storage tanks* having a volume of less than 800 gallons and installed below grade shall not be required to be equipped with a manhole where provided with a service port that is not less than 8 inches (203 mm) in diameter.

C1-101.12.7.7 Venting. Tanks shall be provided with a vent sized in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code* and based on the diameter of the tank influent pipe. Tank vents shall not be connected to sanitary drainage system vents.

C1-101.12.7.8 Inlets. *Storage tank* inlets shall be designed to introduce water into the tank so as to avoid agitating the contents.

C1-101.12.7.9 Outlets. Deleted.

C1-101.12.7.10 Drain. A maintenance outlet shall be located at the lowest point of aboveground storage tanks for maintenance purposes and shall discharge in a manner consistent with the storm water runoff requirements of the *jurisdiction* and at a sufficient distance from the tank to avoid damaging the tank foundation.

C1-101.12.7.11 Labeling and signage. *Storage tanks* shall bear signage that reads as follows: "CAUTION: NON-POTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK." Where an opening is provided that could allow the entry of personnel, the opening shall bear signage that reads as follows: "DANGER – CONFINED SPACE." Markings shall be indelibly printed on a tag or sign constructed of corrosion-resistant waterproof material mounted on the tank or shall be indelibly printed on the tank. The letters of words shall be not less than 0.5 inches in height and shall be of a color that contrasts with the background on which they are applied.

C1-101.12.8 Valves. Valves shall be supplied in accordance with **Sections** C1-101.12.8.1 and C1-101.12.8.2.

C1-101.12.8.1 Influent diversion. Deleted.

C1-101.12.8.2 Backwater valve. A backwater valve shall be installed on each overflow that is directly connected to a storm sewer.

C1-101.12.9 Roof washer. Deleted.

C1-101.12.10 Vent piping. *Storage tanks* shall be provided with a vent in accordance with the requirements of Section C1-101.12.7.7. Vents shall be sized in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code*, based on the aggregate diameter of *storage tank* influent pipe(s). Vents shall be protected from contamination by means of a U-bend installed with the opening directed downward or an *approved cap*. Vent outlets shall extend a minimum of 4" above grade, or as necessary to prevent surface water from entering the *storage tank*. Vent openings shall be protected against the entrance of vermin and insects in accordance with the requirements of Section C1-101.8.

C1-101.12.11 Pumping and control system. Mechanical equipment including pumps, valves and filters shall be easily accessible and removable in order to perform *repair*, maintenance and cleaning. Pressurized water shall be supplied at a pressure appropriate for the application.

C1-101.12.11.1 Standby power. Deleted.

C1-101.12.11.2 Inlet control valve alarm. Deleted.

C1-101.12.11.3 Water-pressure reducing valve or regulator. Where the *rainwater* pressure supplied by the pumping system exceeds 80 psi (552 kPa) static, a pressure-reducing valve shall be installed to reduce the pressure in the *rainwater* distribution system piping to 80 psi (552 kPa) static or less. Pressure-reducing valves shall be specified and installed in accordance with Section 604.8 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.12.12 Distribution pipe. *Distribution piping* shall comply with Sections C1-101.12.12.1 through C1-101.12.12.4.

C1-101.12.12.1 Materials. *Distribution piping* conveying *rainwater* shall conform to the standards and requirements specified by the *International Plumbing Code* for *non-potable* or *potable* water, as applicable.

C1-101.12.12.2 Joints. *Distribution piping* conveying *rainwater* shall utilize joints *approved* for use with the *distribution piping* and appropriate for the intended applications as specified in the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.12.12.3 Size. *Distribution piping* conveying *rainwater* water shall be sized in accordance with the *International Plumbing Code* for the intended application.

C1-101.12.12.4 Labeling and marking. *Non-potable rainwater distribution piping* shall be of the color purple and shall be embossed or integrally stamped or marked with the words: "CAUTION: NONPOTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK" or shall be installed with a purple identification tape or wrap. Identification tape shall be at least 3 inches wide and have white or black lettering on purple field stating "CAUTION: NON-POTABLE WATER – DO NOT DRINK". Identification tape shall be installed on top of *non-potable rainwater distribution pipes*, fastened at least every 10 feet to each pipe length and run continuously the entire length of the pipe. Lettering shall be readily observable within the room or space where the piping is located.

Exception: Deleted.

C1-101.13 Tests and inspections. Tests and inspection of components installed within a building shall be performed in accordance with Sections C1-101.13.1 through C1-101.13.10.

C1-101.13.1 Drainage and vent tests. The testing of *rainwater* collection piping, overflow piping, vent piping and *storage tank* drains shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.13.2 Drainage and vent final test. A final test shall be applied to the *rainwater* collection piping, overflow piping, *storage tank*, and tank vent piping in accordance with Section 312.4 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.13.3 Water supply system test. The testing of makeup water supply piping and *rainwater distribution piping* shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.5 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.13.4 Inspection and testing of backflow prevention assemblies. The testing of backflow preventers and *backwater valves* shall be conducted in accordance with Section 312.10 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.13.5 Inspection vermin and insect protection. All inlets and vents to the system shall be inspected to ensure that each is protected to prevent the entrance of insects or vermin into *storage tank* and piping systems in accordance with Section C1-101.8.

C1-101.13.6 Roof gutter inspection and test. Deleted.

C1-101.13.7 Roofwasher test. Deleted.

C1-101.13.8 Storage tank tests. *Storage tanks* shall be tested with either air or water in accordance with the following:

1. *Storage tanks* shall be filled with water to the overflow line prior to and during inspection. All seams and joints shall be left exposed and the tank shall remain water tight without leakage for a period of 24 hours.
2. After 24 hours, supplemental water shall be introduced for a period of 15 minutes to verify proper drainage of the overflow system and verify that there are no leaks.
3. Following a successful test of the overflow, the water level in the tank shall be reduced to a level that is at 2 inches below the makeup water trigger point by using the tank drain. The tank drain shall be observed for proper operation. The makeup water system shall be observed for proper operation, and successful automatic shutoff of the system at the refill threshold shall be verified. Water shall not be drained from the overflow at any time during the refill test.
4. If air testing, system shall be pressurized with air equivalent to the depth of the tank in accordance with Section 312.5 of the *International Plumbing Code*.

C1-101.13.9 Supply pressure test. The static water pressure at the point of use furthest from the supply shall be verified to be within the range required for the application, in accordance with Section C1-101.12.11.

C1-101.13.10 Water quality test. Deleted.

C1-101.14 Operation and maintenance manuals. Operations and maintenance materials shall be supplied in accordance with C1-101.14.1 through C1-101.14.4.

C1-101.14.1 Manual. A detailed operations and maintenance manual shall be supplied ~~in hardcopy form~~ with all *rainwater* collection systems.

C1-101.14.2 Schematics. The manual shall include a detailed system schematic, the locations of all system components, and a list of all system components including manufacturer and model number.

C1-101.14.3 Maintenance procedures. The manual shall provide a maintenance schedule and procedures for all system components requiring periodic maintenance. Consumable parts including filters shall be noted along with part numbers.

C1-101.14.4 Operations procedures. The manual shall include system startup and shutdown procedures. The manual shall include detailed operating procedures for the system.

C1-101.15 System abandonment. If the owner of a *rainwater collection and conveyance system* elects to cease use of, or fails to properly maintain such system, the system shall be abandoned and shall comply with the following:

1. All system piping connecting to a utility-provided water system shall be removed or disabled.
2. The *rainwater distribution piping* system shall be replaced with an *approved potable* water supply piping system. Where an existing *potable* pipe system is already in place, the fixtures shall be connected to the existing system.
3. The storage tank shall be secured from accidental access by sealing or locking tank inlets and access points, or filling with sand or equivalent.

C1-101.16 Potable water applications. Deleted.

C1-101.16.1 Water quality testing. Deleted.

C1-101.16.1.1 Test methods. Deleted.

C1-101.16.1.1.1 Tests required. Deleted.

C1-101.16.1.2 Test frequency. Deleted.

C1-101.16.1.3 Test records. Deleted.

2012 NC Residential Code

2012 NC Residential Code

R101.2 Scope. Accessory Buildings and Structures. (130910 Item B-10)

R101.2 Scope. The provisions of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-family Dwellings* shall apply to the construction, *alteration*, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, removal and demolition of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above *grade plane* in height with a separate means of egress and their *accessory buildings and structures*.

Exception: Live/work units complying with the requirements of Section 419 of the *North Carolina Building Code* shall be permitted to be built as one- and two-family *dwellings* or townhouses. Fire suppression required by Section 419.5 of the *North Carolina Building Code* when constructed under the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-family Dwellings* shall conform to Section 903.3.1.3 of the *International Building Code*.

R101.2.1 Accessory buildings. Accessory buildings with any dimension greater than 12 feet (3658mm) must meet the provisions of this code. Accessory buildings may be constructed without a masonry or concrete foundation, except in coastal high hazard or ocean hazard areas, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The accessory building shall not exceed 400 square feet (37m²) or one story in height;
2. The building is supported on a wood foundation of minimum 2x6 or 3x4 mudsill of approved wood in accordance with Section R317; and
3. The building is anchored to resist overturning and sliding by installing a minimum of one ground anchor at each corner of the building. The total resisting force of the anchors shall be equal to 20 psf (958 Pa) times the plan area of the building.

R101.2.2 Accessory structures. Accessory structures are not required to meet the provisions of this code except decks, gazebos, retaining walls as required by Section R404.4, detached masonry chimneys built less than 10' from other buildings, pools or spas per appendix G, or detached carports.

Exception: Portable lightweight aluminum or canvas type carports not exceeding 400 sq ft or 12' mean roof height and tree houses supported solely by a tree are exempt from the provisions of this code.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R102.7 Existing structures. (150310 Item B-9)

R102.7 Existing structures. For requirements of existing structures, refer to the North Carolina Administration and Enforcement Requirements Code and the North Carolina Existing Building Code.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R202 Definitions. (130910 Item B-11)

ACCESSORY BUILDING. In one- and two-family dwellings not more than three stories high with separate means of egress, a building, the use of which is incidental to that of the main building and which is detached and located on the same lot. An accessory building is a building that is roofed over and more than 50% of its exterior walls are enclosed. Examples of accessory buildings are garages, storage buildings, workshops, and boat houses.

ACCESSORY STRUCTURE. An accessory structure is any structure not roofed over and enclosed more than 50% of its perimeter walls, that is not considered an accessory building located on one- and two-family dwelling sites which is incidental to that of the main building. Examples of accessory structures are fencing, decks, gazebos, arbors, retaining walls, barbecue pits, detached chimneys, tree houses (supported by tree only), playground equipment, and yard art. Accessory structures are not required to meet the provisions of this code except decks, gazebos, retaining walls as required by Section R404.4, detached masonry chimneys built less than 10' from other buildings, pools or spas per appendix G, or detached carports. ~~are not required to meet the provisions of this code.~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

Ch. 2, R502.1.6, R502.8.2, R602.1.3, R802.1.5, Ch. 44 Cross-Laminated Timber. (141209 Item B-1)

(Add a definition in Chapter 2)

CROSS-LAMINATED TIMBER. A prefabricated engineered wood product consisting of not less than three layers of solid-sawn lumber or structural composite lumber where the adjacent layers are cross oriented and bonded with structural adhesive to form a solid wood element.

(Revise as follows)

R502.1.6 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

(Revise as follows)

R502.8.2 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural glue-laminated members, cross-laminated timber members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

(Revise as follows)

R602.1.3 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

R602.1.3 R602.1.4 Structural log members. (no change, only renumbering)

(Revise as follows)

R802.1.5 Cross-laminated timber. Cross-laminated timber shall be manufactured and identified as required by ANSI/APA PRG 320.

R802.1.5 R802.1.6 Structural log members. (no change, only renumbering)

(Revise as follows)

R802.7.2 Engineered wood products. Cuts, notches and holes bored in trusses, structural composite lumber, structural glue-laminated, cross-laminated timber members or I-joists are prohibited except where permitted by the manufacturer's recommendations or where the effects of such alterations are specifically considered in the design of the member by a registered design professional.

(Add to Chapter 44 under APA)

ANSI/APA PRG 320-2012 Standard for Performance-rated Cross Laminated Timber
.....R502.1.6, R602.1.3, R802.1.5

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code
Screen Enclosure. (140610 Item B-21)

Revise Sections 202, 301.2.1, 301.2.1.2, 612.5 and 703.4 per attachment.

The effective date of this Rule is **January 1, 2016.**

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R202 DEFINITIONS

SCREEN ENCLOSURE. A building or part thereof, in whole or in part self-supporting, and having walls of insect screening with or without removable vinyl or acrylic wind break panels 10 mil or less with a Class A Flame Spread, and a roof.

R301.2.1 Wind limitations. Buildings and portions thereof shall be limited by wind speed, as defined in Table R301.2 (1) and construction methods in accordance with this code. Basic wind speeds shall be determined from Figure R301.2 (4). Where different construction methods and structural materials are used for various portions of a building, the applicable requirements of this section for each portion shall apply. Where loads for curtain walls exterior windows, skylights, garage doors and exterior doors are not otherwise specified, the loads listed in Table R301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure using Table R301.2(3) shall be used to determine design load performance requirements for curtain walls, exterior windows, skylights, garage doors and exterior doors.

Exception: Openings for exterior balconies, decks, or porches under roofs enclosed with screen or removable vinyl or acrylic wind break panels shall be exempt from the loads listed in Table R301.2(2) and the height and exposure factors listed in Table R301.2(3). Vinyl and acrylic glazed panels shall be removable. Removable panels shall be identified as removable by a decal. The identification decal shall state "Removable panel SHALL be removed when wind speeds exceed 65 mph (34 m/s)." Decals shall be placed such that the decal is visible when the panel is installed.

TABLE R301.2(2) COMPONENT AND CLADDING LOADS FOR A BUILDING WITH A MEAN ROOF HEIGHT OF 30 FEET LOCATED IN EXPOSURE B (psf)^{a,b,c,d,e,f}

(No change to table values)

NOTES:

- a. The effective wind area shall be equal to the span length multiplied by an effective width. This width shall be permitted to be not be less than one-third the span length. For cladding fasteners, the effective wind area shall not be greater than the area that is tributary to an individual fastener.
- b. For effective areas between those given above, the load may be interpolated; otherwise, use the load associated with the lower effective area.
- c. Table values shall be adjusted for height and exposure by multiplying by the adjustment coefficient in Table R301.2(3).
- d. See Figure R301.2(7) for location of zones.
- e. Plus and minus signs signify pressures acting toward and away from the building surfaces.
- f. Openings for exterior balconies, decks, or porches under roofs enclosed with screen or removable vinyl or acrylic wind break panels shall be exempt from the loads listed in Table R301.2(2) and the height and exposure factors listed in Table R301.2(3). Vinyl and acrylic glazed panels shall be removable. Removable panels shall be identified as removable by a decal. The identification decal shall state "Removable panel SHALL be removed when wind speeds exceed 65 mph (34 m/s)." Decals shall be placed such that the decal is visible when the panel is installed.

R301.2.1.2 Protection of openings. Windows in buildings located in windborne debris regions shall have glazed openings protected from windborne debris. Glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of the Large Missile Test of ASTM E 1996 and ASTM E 1886 referenced therein. Garage door glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of an approved impact resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

Exceptions:

1. Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of 7/16 inch (11 mm) and a maximum span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in one - and two-story buildings. Panels shall be precut so that they can be attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method so that they can be secured

with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the component and cladding loads determined in accordance with either Table R301.2 (2) or ASCE 7, with the permanent corrosion resistant attachment hardware provided. Attachment in accordance with Table R301.2.1.2 is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less where wind speeds do not exceed 130 miles per hour (58 m/s).

2. Openings for exterior balconies, decks, or porches under roofs enclosed with screen or removable vinyl or acrylic wind break panels shall not be required to be protected provided the spaces are separated from the building interior by a wall and all openings in the wall separating the unit from the balcony, deck or porch are protected in accordance with this section. Vinyl and acrylic glazed panels shall be removable. Removable panels shall be identified as removable by a decal. The identification decal shall state "Removable panel SHALL be removed when wind speeds exceed 65 mph (34 m/s)." Decals shall be placed such that the decal is visible when the panel is installed.

R612.5 Performance. Exterior windows and doors shall be designed to resist the design wind loads specified in Table R301.2(2) adjusted for height and exposure per Table R301.2(3).

Exception: Openings for exterior balconies, decks, or porches under roofs enclosed with screen or removable vinyl or acrylic wind break panels shall be exempt from the loads listed in Table R301.2(2) and the height and exposure factors listed in Table R301.2(3). Vinyl and acrylic glazed panels shall be removable. Removable panels shall be identified as removable by a decal. The identification decal shall state "Removable panel SHALL be removed when wind speeds exceed 65 mph (34 m/s)." Decals shall be placed such that the decal is visible when the panel is installed.

R703.4 Attachments. Unless specified otherwise, all wall coverings shall be securely fastened in accordance with Table R703.4 or with other approved aluminum, stainless steel, zinc-coated or other approved corrosion-resistive fasteners. Where the basic wind speed per Figure R301.2(4) is 110 miles per hour (49 m/s) or higher, the attachment of wall coverings shall be designed to resist the component and cladding loads specified in Table R301.2(2), adjusted for height and exposure in accordance with Table R301.2(3).

Exception: Openings for exterior balconies, decks, or porches under roofs enclosed with screen or removable vinyl or acrylic wind break panels shall be exempt from the loads listed in Table R301.2(2) and the height and exposure factors listed in Table R301.2(3). Vinyl and acrylic glazed panels shall be removable. Removable panels shall be identified as removable by a decal. The identification decal shall state "Removable panel SHALL be removed when wind speeds exceed 65 mph (34 m/s)." Decals shall be placed such that the decal is visible when the panel is installed.

R301.2.1.2 Protection of openings. (130311 Item B-9)

R301.2.1.2 Protection of openings. Windows in buildings located in windborne debris regions shall have glazed openings protected from windborne debris. Glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of the Large Missile Test of ASTM E 1996 and ASTM E 1886 referenced therein. Garage door glazed opening protection for windborne debris shall meet the requirements of an *approved* impact resisting standard or ANSI/DASMA 115.

Exception: Wood structural panels with a minimum thickness of 7/16 inch (11 mm) and a maximum span of 8 feet (2438 mm) shall be permitted for opening protection in one- and two-story buildings. Panels shall be precut so that they can be attached to the framing surrounding the opening containing the product with the glazed opening. Panels shall be predrilled as required for the anchorage method, ~~and shall so that they can~~ be secured with the attachment hardware provided. Attachments shall be designed to resist the component and cladding loads determined in accordance with either Table R301.2(2) or ASCE 7, with the permanent corrosion resistant attachment hardware provided, ~~and anchors permanently installed on the building.~~ Attachment in accordance with Table R301.2.1.2 is permitted for buildings with a mean roof height of 33 feet (10 058 mm) or less where wind speeds do not exceed 130 miles per hour (58 m/s).

**TABLE R301.2.1.2
WINDBORNE DEBRIS PROTECTION FASTENING SCHEDULE
FOR WOOD STRUCTURAL PANELS^{a,b,c,d}**

FASTENER TYPE	FASTENER SPACING (inches) ^{a,b}		
	Panel span ≤ 4 feet	4 feet < panel span ≤ 6 feet	6 feet < panel span ≤ 8 feet
No. 8 wood screw based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	10	8
No. 10 wood screw based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	12	9
¼-inch lag screw based anchor with 2-inch embedment length	16	16	16

For SI: 1 inch = 25.4 mm, 1 foot = 304.8 mm, 1 pound = 4.448 N, 1 mile per hour = 0.447 m/s.

a. This table is based on 130mph wind speeds and a 33-foot mean roof height.

- b. Fasteners shall be installed at opposing ends of the wood structural panel. Fasteners shall be located a minimum of 1 inch from the edge of the panel.
- c. ~~Anchors~~ Fasteners shall penetrate through the exterior wall covering with an embedment length of 2 inches minimum into the building frame. Fasteners shall be located a minimum of 2½ inches from the edge of concrete block or concrete.
- d. Where panels are attached to masonry or masonry/stucco, they shall be attached using vibration-resistant anchors having a minimum ultimate withdrawal capacity of 1500 pounds.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

***R302.1, 302.1.1, 302.1.2, 302.2.6 Eave Projections, Soffit Protection, Flame Spread.
(121210 Item B-2)***

R302.1 Exterior walls. Construction, projections, openings and penetrations of *exterior walls of dwellings* and accessory buildings shall comply with Table R302.1.

Exceptions:

1. Walls, projections, openings or penetrations in walls perpendicular to the line used to determine the fire separation distance. Townhouse eave projections shall comply with R302.2.5 and R302.2.6.

(no change to exceptions 2 through 5)

(Delete Section R703.11.3 Soffit and replace with new Section R302.1.1 Soffit protection)

R302.1.1 Soffit protection. In construction using vinyl or aluminum soffit material the following application shall apply. Soffit assemblies located on buildings with less than a 10 feet fire separation distance shall be securely attached to framing members and applied over fire retardant treated wood, 23/32 inch wood sheathing or 5/8 inch exterior grade or moisture resistant gypsum board. Venting requirements shall be provided in both soffit and underlayments. Vents shall be either nominal 2-inch (51mm) continuous or equivalent intermittent and shall not exceed the minimum net free air requirements established in Section R806.2 by more than 50%. Townhouse construction shall meet the additional requirements of R302.2.5 and R302.2.6.

Exceptions:

1. Any portion of soffits having 10 feet or more fire separation distance.
2. Roof rake lines where soffit does not communicate to attic are not required to be protected per this Section.
3. Soffits with less than 3 feet fire separation distance shall meet the projection fire rating requirements of Table R302.1.
4. Soffits between buildings located on the same lot.

(Delete Section R703.11.4 Flame spread and substitute with new Section R302.1.2 Flame Spread)

R302.1.2 Flame spread. Vinyl siding and vinyl soffit materials shall have a Flame Spread Index of 25 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E-84.

R302.2.6 Townhouse eave projections. Overhang projections not exceeding 12 inches (305 mm) shall be allowed to extend beyond the property line in townhouse buildings provided all the following conditions are met:

1. Required fire resistant rated wall assembly is tight to roof deck;
2. Eaves shall be protected with roof decking and fascia of non-combustible materials or approved fire-retardant- treated wood; and
3. Eaves shall have not less than 1-hour one layer of 5/8" type X gypsum or equivalent fire-resistive construction on the underside.

~~**R703.11.3 Soffit.** In one- and two-family dwelling construction using vinyl or aluminum as a soffit material, the soffit material shall be securely attached to framing members and use an underlayment material of either fire retardant treated wood, ²²/₃₂ inch wood sheathing or ⁵/₈ inch gypsum board. Venting requirements apply to both soffit and underlayment and shall be per Section R806 of the *North Carolina Residential Code*. Where the property line is 10 feet or more from the building face, the provisions of this code section do not apply. Repealed.~~

~~**R703.11.4 Flame Spread.** Vinyl siding and vinyl soffit materials when used in one- and two-family dwelling construction shall have a flame spread index of 25 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E 84. Repealed.~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Table R302.1 – Exterior Walls

EXTERIOR WALL ELEMENT		MINIMUM FIRE-RESISTANCE RATING	MINIMUM FIRE SEPARATION DISTANCE
Walls	(Fire-resistance rated)	1 hour-tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263 with exposure to both sides	$\leq 5 \leq 3$ feet
	(Not fire-resistance rated)	0-Hours	$\geq 5 \geq 3$ feet
Projections	(Fire-resistance rated)	1-Hour on the underside	≥ 2 feet to 5 feet < 3 feet
	(Not fire-resistance rated)	0-Hours	≥ 3 feet
Openings	Not Allowed	N/A	< 3 feet
	25% Maximum of Wall Area	0-Hours	3 feet
	Unlimited	0-Hours	≥ 3 feet
Penetrations	All	Comply with Section R302.4	$\leq 5 \leq 3$ feet
		None Required	≥ 3 feet

For SI: 1 foot=304.8 mm.

N/A = Not Applicable

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2013.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R302.2, R313.1 Townhouse Sprinkler Option. (100615 Item B-5)

R302.2 Townhouses. Each townhouse shall be considered a separate building and shall be separated by fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies meeting the requirements of Section R302.1 for exterior walls.

Exception: If an automatic residential fire sprinkler is installed, a common 1-hour fire-resistance-rated wall assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL263 is permitted for townhouses if such walls **do** not contain plumbing or mechanical equipment, ducts or vents in the cavity of the common wall. The wall shall be rated for fire exposure from both sides and shall extend to and be tight against exterior walls and the underside of the roof sheathing. Electrical installations shall be installed in accordance with Section R302.4.

R313.1 Townhouse Automatic Fire Sprinkler Systems. An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall be installed in townhouses.

Exceptions:

1. Townhouses constructed with a common 2-hour fire-resistance-rated wall assembly tested in accordance with ASTM E119 or UL 263 provided such walls do not contain plumbing or mechanical equipment, ducts or vents in the cavity of the common wall. The wall shall be rated for fire exposure from both sides and shall extend to and be tight against exterior walls and the underside of the roof sheathing. Electrical installations shall be installed in accordance with Chapters 34 through 43. Penetrations for electrical outlet boxes shall be in accordance with Section R302.4.

2. An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall not be required when additions or alterations are made to existing townhouses that do not have an automatic residential fire sprinkler system installed.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R302.5.1 Opening protection. (120611 Item B-8)

R302.5.1 Opening protection. Openings from a private garage directly into a room used for sleeping purposes shall not be permitted. Other openings between the garage and residence shall be equipped with solid wood doors not less than 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ inches (35 mm) in thickness, solid or honeycomb core steel doors not less than 1 $\frac{3}{8}$ inches (35 mm) thick, or 20-minute fire-rated doors.

Exception: A disappearing/pull-down stairway to uninhabited attic space with minimum $\frac{3}{8}$ -inch (9.53 mm) (nominal) fire retardant-treated structural panel is deemed to meet Table R302.6 Dwelling/Garage Separation of not less than $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch (12.7 mm) gypsum board or equivalent applied to garage side.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

Table R302.6 Dwelling/Garage Separation. (150310 Item B-10)

**TABLE R302.6
DWELLING/GARAGE SEPARATION**

SEPARATION	MATERIAL
From the residence and attics	Not less than 1/2-inch gypsum board or equivalent applied to the garage side
From all habitable rooms above the garage ^a	Not less than 5/8-inch X-gypsum board or equivalent
Structure(s) supporting floor/ceiling assemblies used for separation	Not less than 1/2-inch gypsum board or equivalent
Garages located less than 3 feet from a dwelling unit on the same lot	Not less than 1/2-inch gypsum board or equivalent applied to the interior side of exterior walls that are within this area

For SI: 1 inch – 25.4 mm, 1 foot – 304.8mm

Footnote: a. For dwelling units constructed prior to the 2012 code edition **effective date (January 1, 2012)**, 1/2" or greater existing gypsum on the bottom side of the garage ceiling shall be acceptable. Joints shall be taped.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R308.4 Hazardous locations. The following shall be considered specific hazardous locations for the purposes of glazing:

1. Glazing in all fixed and operable panels of swinging, sliding and bifold doors.

Exceptions:

1. Glazed openings of a size through which a 3-inch diameter (76 mm) sphere is unable to pass.
2. Decorative glazing.

2. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel ~~adjacent to a~~ in the same plane as the door where the nearest vertical edge is within 24-inches (610 mm) of the door in a closed position and whose bottom edge is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the floor or walking surface.

Exceptions:

1. Decorative glazing.
2. When there is an intervening wall or other permanent barrier between the door and the glazing.
3. ~~Glazing in walls on the latch side of and perpendicular to the plane of the door in a closed position.~~ Deleted.
4. Glazing adjacent to a door where access through the door is to a closet or storage area 3 feet (914 mm) or less in depth.
5. Glazing that is adjacent to the fixed panel of patio doors.

3. Glazing in an individual fixed or operable panel that meets all of the following conditions:

- 3.1. The exposed area of an individual pane is larger than 9 square feet (0.836 m²); and
- 3.2. The bottom edge of the glazing is less than 18 inches (457 mm) above the floor; and
- 3.3. The top edge of the glazing is more than 36 inches (914 mm) above the floor; and
- 3.4. One or more walking surfaces are within 36 inches (914 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the glazing.

Exceptions:

1. Decorative glazing.
2. When a horizontal rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and be a minimum of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in cross sectional height.
3. Outboard panes in insulating glass units and other multiple glazed panels when the bottom edge of the glass is 25 feet (7620 mm) or more above *grade*, a roof, walking surfaces or other horizontal [within 45 degrees (0.79 rad) of horizontal] surface adjacent to the glass exterior.

4. All glazing in railings regardless of area or height above a walking surface. Included are structural baluster panels and nonstructural infill panels.

5. Glazing in enclosures for or walls facing hot tubs, whirlpools, saunas, steam rooms, bathtubs and showers, where the bottom exposed edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) measured vertically above any standing or walking surface.

Exception: Glazing that is more than 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, from the waters edge of a hot tub, whirlpool or bathtub.

6. Glazing in walls and fences adjacent to indoor and outdoor swimming pools, hot tubs and spas where the bottom edge of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above a walking surface and within 60 inches (1524 mm), measured horizontally and in a straight line, of the water's edge. This shall apply to single glazing and all panes in multiple glazing.

7. Glazing adjacent to stairways, landings and ramps within 36 inches (914 mm) horizontally of a walking surface when the exposed surface of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the plane of the adjacent walking surface.

Exceptions:

1. When a rail is installed on the accessible side(s) of the glazing 34 to 38 inches (864 to 965 mm) above the walking surface. The rail shall be capable of withstanding a horizontal load of 50 pounds per linear foot (730 N/m) without contacting the glass and be a minimum of 1 1/2 inches (38 mm) in cross sectional height.

2. The side of the stairway has a guardrail or handrail, including balusters or in-fill panels, complying with Sections R311.7.7 and R312 and the plane of the glazing is more than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing; or

3. When a solid wall or panel extends from the plane of the adjacent walking surface to 34 inches (863 mm) to 36 inches (914 mm) above the walking surface and the construction at the top of that wall or panel is capable of withstanding the same horizontal load as a *guard*.

4. Where a change in elevation of a walking surface is 8 1/4 inches or less at an exterior door.

8. Glazing adjacent to stairways within 60 inches (1524 mm) horizontally of the bottom tread of a stairway in ~~any~~ the ~~direction of travel~~ when the exposed surface of the glazing is less than 60 inches (1524 mm) above the nose of the tread.

Exceptions: Deleted.

~~1. The side of the stairway has a guardrail or handrail, including balusters or in-fill panels, complying with Sections R311.7.7 and R312 and the plane of the glass is more than 18 inches (457 mm) from the railing; or~~

~~2. When a solid wall or panel extends from the plane of the adjacent walking surface to 34 inches (864mm) to 36 inches (914 mm) above the walking surface and the construction at the top of that wall or panel is capable of withstanding the same horizontal load as a *guard*.~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R310.1.1 Minimum opening area. (130910 Item B-14)

R310.1.1 Minimum opening area. All emergency escape and rescue openings shall have a minimum net clear openable area of 4 square feet (0.372 m²). The minimum net clear opening height shall be 22 inches (558 mm). The minimum net clear opening width shall be 20 inches (508 mm). Emergency escape and rescue openings must have a minimum total glazing area of not less than 5 square feet (0.465 m²) in the case of a ground floor level window and not less than 5.7 square feet (0.530 m²) in the case of an upper story window.

Exception: ~~Grade floor openings shall have a minimum net clear opening of 5 square feet (0.465 m²).~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R311.2 Egress door. (101214 Item B-17)

R311.2 Egress door. At least one exterior egress door shall be provided for each *dwelling* unit. The egress door shall be side-hinged, and shall provide a minimum clear width of 32 inches (813mm) when measured between the face of the door and the stop, with the door open 90 degrees (1.57 rad). The minimum clear height of the door opening shall not be less than 78 inches (1981 mm) in height measured from the top of the threshold to the bottom of the stop. Other exterior doors shall not be required to comply with these minimum dimensions. All interior ~~and~~ egress doors and a minimum of one exterior egress doors shall be readily openable from the side from which egress is to be made without the use of a key or special knowledge or effort.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R311.4 Vertical egress. (150310 Item B-12)

R311.4 Vertical egress. ~~Egress from habitable levels including habitable attics and basements not provided with an egress door in accordance with Section R311.2 shall be by a ramp in accordance with Section R311.8 or a stairway in accordance with Section R311.7. Deleted.~~

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R311.7.1 Width. (140909 Item B-8)

R311.7.1 Width. Stairways shall not be less than 36 inches (914 mm) in clear width at all points above the permitted handrail height and below the required headroom height. Handrails shall not project more than 4.5 inches (114 mm) on either side of the stairway and the minimum clear width of the stairway at and below the handrail height, including treads and landings, shall not be less than 31½ inches (787 mm) where a handrail is installed on one side and 27 inches (698 mm) where handrails are provided on both sides.

Exceptions:

1. The width of spiral stairways shall be in accordance with Section R311.7.9.1.
2. Stairways not required for egress may be as narrow as 26 inches.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R313.1 Townhouse automatic fire sprinkler systems. (120611 Item B-12)

R313.1 Townhouse automatic fire sprinkler systems. An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall be installed in *townhouses*.

Exceptions:

1. Townhouses constructed with a common 2-hour fire-resistance-rated wall assembly or two 1-hour fire-resistance-rated wall assemblies that comply with Table R302.1 tested in accordance with ASTM E 119 or UL 263 provided such walls do not contain plumbing or mechanical equipment, ducts or vents in the cavity of the common wall. The wall(s) shall be rated for fire exposure from both sides and shall extend to and be tight against exterior walls and the underside of the roof sheathing. Electrical installations in the separation walls shall be installed in accordance with the North Carolina Electrical Code Chapters 34 through 43. Penetrations for electrical outlet boxes shall be in accordance with Section R302.4.
2. An automatic residential fire sprinkler system shall not be required when additions or alterations are made to existing townhouses that do not have an automatic residential fire sprinkler system installed.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R314.3 Smoke Alarm Location. (101214 Item B-5)

R314.3 Location. Smoke alarms shall be installed in the following locations:

1. In each sleeping room.
2. Outside each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedrooms.
3. On each additional story of the dwelling, including basements and habitable attics (finished) but not including crawl spaces, or uninhabitable (unfinished) attics, and uninhabitable (unfinished) attic-stories and uninhabitable attics. In dwellings or dwelling units with split levels and without an intervening door between the adjacent levels, a smoke alarm installed on the upper level shall suffice for the adjacent lower level provided that the lower level is less than one full story below the upper level.

When more than one smoke alarm is required to be installed within an individual dwelling unit the alarm devices shall be interconnected in such a manner that the actuation of one alarm will activate all of the alarms in the individual unit.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R315 Carbon monoxide alarms. (110308 Item B-6b)

R315.1 Carbon monoxide alarms. In new construction, one-and two-family dwellings and townhouses within which fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are installed or that have attached garages shall be provided with an approved carbon monoxide alarm installed outside of each separate sleeping area in the immediate vicinity of the bedroom(s) as directed by the alarm manufacturer.

R315.2 Where required-existing dwellings. ~~For~~ ~~an~~ existing dwellings, where interior alterations, repairs, ~~fuel-fired appliance replacements,~~ or additions requiring a building permit occurs, or where one or more sleeping rooms are added or created, or where fuel-fired appliances or fireplaces are added or replaced, carbon monoxide alarms shall be provided in accordance with Section 315.1.

Exception:

Work involving the exterior surfaces of dwellings, such as the replacement of roofing or siding, or the addition or replacement of windows or doors, or the addition of a porch or deck, or the installation of a fuel-fire appliance that cannot introduce carbon monoxide to the interior of the dwelling, are exempt from the requirements of this section.

R315.3 Alarm requirements. The required carbon monoxide alarms shall be audible in all bedrooms over background noise levels with all intervening doors closed. Single station carbon monoxide alarms shall be listed as complying with UL 2034 and shall be installed in accordance with this code and the manufacturer's installation instructions. Battery powered, plug-in, or hard-wired alarms are acceptable for use.

The delayed effective date of the highlighted portion of this Rule is January 1, 2011.
The delayed effective date of the underlined portion of this Rule is January 1, 2015.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R322.2.1, R322.3.2 Elevation requirements. (120611 Item B-13)

R322.2.1 Elevation requirements.

1. Buildings and structures shall have the lowest floors elevated to or above the base flood elevation ~~plus one foot (305 mm)~~, or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher.
2. In areas of shallow flooding (AO Zones), buildings and structures shall have the lowest floor (including basement) elevated at least as high above the highest adjacent grade as the depth number specified in feet (mm) on the FIRM ~~plus one foot (305 mm)~~, or at least 3 feet (915 mm) if a depth number is not specified.
3. Basement floors that are below grade on all sides shall be elevated to or above the base flood elevation ~~plus one foot (305 mm)~~, or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher.

Exception: Enclosed areas below the design flood elevation, including basements whose floors are not below grade on all sides, shall meet the requirements of Section R322.2.2.

R322.3.2 Elevation requirements.

1. All buildings and structures erected within coastal high hazard areas shall be elevated so that the lowest portion of all structural members supporting the lowest floor, with the exception of mat or raft foundations, piling, pile caps, columns, grade beams and bracing, is:
 - 1.1 Located at or above the design flood elevation, if the lowest horizontal structural member is oriented parallel to the direction of wave approach, where parallel shall mean less than or equal to 20 degrees (0.35 rad) from the direction of approach; **or**
 - 1.2 Located at the base flood elevation ~~plus 1 foot (305 mm)~~, or the design flood elevation, whichever is higher, if the lowest horizontal structural member is oriented perpendicular to the direction of wave approach, where perpendicular shall mean greater than 20 degrees (0.35 rad) from the direction of approach.
2. Basement floors that are below **grade** on all sides are prohibited.
3. The use of fill for structural support is prohibited
4. Minor grading, and the placement of minor quantities of fill, shall be permitted for landscaping and for drainage purposes under and around buildings and for support of parking slabs, pool decks, patios and walkways.

Exception: Walls and partitions enclosing areas below the design flood elevation shall meet the requirements of Sections R322.3.4 and R322.3.5.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Table R403.1 Minimum width of concrete or masonry footing. (101214 Item B-19) (120611 Item B-14)

**TABLE R403.1
MINIMUM WIDTH OF CONCRETE OR
MASONRY FOOTINGS (inches)^a**

	LOAD-BEARING VALUE OF SOIL (psf)			
	1,500	2,000	3,000	4,000
Conventional light-frame construction				
1-story	12 ^b	12 ^b	12	12
2-story	15 ^b	15 12 ^b	12	12
3-story	23	17	12	12
4-inch brick veneer over light frame or 8-inch hollow concrete masonry				
1-story	12 ^b	12 ^b	12	12
2-story	15 ^b	15 ^b	12	12
3-story	32	24	16	12
8-inch solid or fully grouted masonry				
1-story	16	16 12 ^b	12	12
2-story	29	21	14	12
3-story	42	32	21	16

For SI: 1-inch = 25.4 mm, 1 pound per square foot = 0.0479 kPa.

- a. Where minimum footing width is 12 inches, use of a single wythe of solid or fully grouted 12-inch nominal concrete masonry units is permitted.
- b. A minimum footing width of 12" is acceptable for monolithic slab foundations.**

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2013.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R403.1.4 Minimum depth. (120611 Item B-15)

R403.1.4 Minimum depth. All exterior footings and foundation systems shall extend below the frost line specified in Table R301.2(1). In no case shall the bottom of the exterior footings be less than 12 inches below the ~~undisturbed ground surface or engineered fill~~ finished grade.

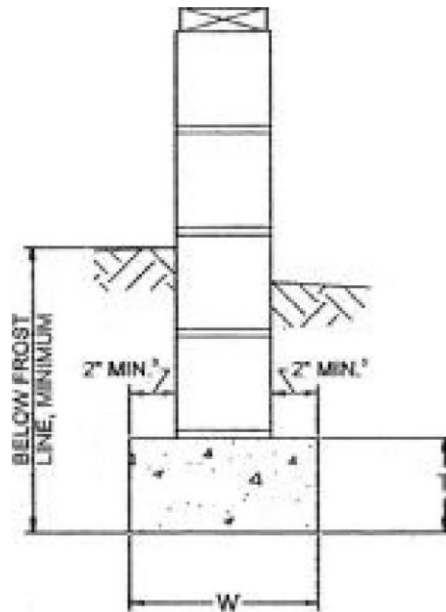
Exception: Frost protected footings constructed in accordance with Section R403.3 and footings and foundations erected on solid rock shall not be required to extend below the frost line.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

FIGURE R403.3 (1) CONCRETE AND MASONRY FOUNDATION DETAILS. (101214 Item B-20)

**FIGURE R403.3 (1)
CONCRETE AND MASONRY FOUNDATION DETAILS**



1. Foundations shall extend not less than 12 inches below ~~the natural grade or engineered fill~~ finished grade and in no case less than the frost line depth.

REMAINING NOTES TO REMAIN THE SAME

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R408.1.1 Foundation vent sizing. (101214 Item B-21)

R408.1.1 Foundation vent sizing. The minimum net area of ventilation openings shall be not less than 1 square foot (0.0929 m²) for each 150 square feet (13.9 m²) of crawl space ground area.

Exception: The total area of ventilation openings may be reduced to 1/1,500 of the of the ~~crawl space ground area~~ under-floor area where the ground surface is treated with an approved vapor retarder material in accordance with Section R408.2 and the required openings are placed so as to provide cross-ventilation of the space. The installation of operable louvers shall not be prohibited.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R408.2 Ground vapor retarder. (101214 Item B-22) (120910 Item B-5)

R408.2 Ground vapor retarder. (150310 Item B-13)

R408.2 Ground vapor retarder. When required by Section R408.1.1 Exception, a A minimum 6-mil (0.15 mm) polyethylene vapor retarder or equivalent shall be installed to nominally cover all exposed earth in the crawl space, with joints lapped not less than 12 inches (305 mm). Where there is no evidence that the ground water table can rise to within 6 inches (152 mm) of the floor of the crawl space, it is acceptable to puncture the ground vapor retarder at low spots to prevent water puddles from forming on top of the vapor retarder due to condensation. ~~Install a drain to daylight or sump pump at each low spot. Crawl space drains shall be kept separate from roof gutter drain systems and foundation perimeter drains.~~

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2013.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

Chapter 5, Chapter 8 Wood Tables SP. (130910 Item B-3)

Change the following tables in Chapter 5 as indicated in the attachment:

R502.3.1(1), R502.3.1(2), R502.3.3(1), R502.3.3(2), R502.5(1), R502.5(2)

Change the following tables in Chapter 8 as indicated in the attachment:

R802.4(1), R802.4(2), R802.5.1(1), R802.5.1(2), R802.5.1(3), R802.5.1(4), R802.5.1(5),
R802.5.1(6), R802.5.1(7), R802.5.1(8)

http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Documents/2012_NCBuildingCode_amendments/130910%20B3%20Ch5,%20RCh8%20Wood%20Tables%20SP1.pdf

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

Table R502.3.3(2) Cantilever Spans. (120611 Item B-16)

Table R502.3.3(2) Footnotes:

- a. Spans are based on No. 2 Grade lumber of Douglas fir-larch, hem-fir, southern pine, and spruce-pine-fir for repetitive (3 or more) members.
- b. Ratio of backspan to cantilever span shall be at least 2:1.
- c. Connections capable of resisting the indicated uplift force shall be provided at the backspan support.
- d. Uplift force is for a backspan to cantilever span ratio of 2:1. Tabulated uplift values are permitted to be reduced by multiplying by a factor equal to 2 divided by the actual backspan **ratio** provided (2/backspan ratio).
- e. A full-depth rim joist shall be provided at the ~~unsupported end of the cantilever joists~~ cantilever end of the joists. Solid blocking shall be provided at the ~~supported end~~ cantilever support.
- f. Linear interpolation shall be permitted for ground snow loads other than shown.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R506.2.3 Vapor retarder. (120611 Item B-17)

R506.2.3 Vapor retarder. A 6 mil (0.006 inch; 152 µm) polyethylene or *approved* vapor retarder with joints lapped not less than 6 inches (152 mm) shall be placed between the concrete floor slab and the base course or the prepared subgrade where no base course exists.

Exception: The vapor retarder may be omitted:

1. From detached garages, utility buildings and other unheated *accessory structures*.
2. For unheated storage rooms having an area of less than 70 square feet (6.5 m²) and carports.
3. From driveways, walks, patios and other exterior flatwork ~~not likely to be enclosed and heated at a later date.~~
4. Where *approved* by the *building official*, based on local site conditions.
5. From attached garages where floor space at parking level is unheated.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R602.10 Wall Bracing. (120611 Item B-21)

R602.10 Wall bracing. Buildings shall be braced in accordance with this section. Where a building, or portion thereof, does not comply with one or more of the bracing requirements in this section, those portions shall be designed and constructed in accordance with Section R301.1.

Exceptions:

1. Detached one- and two-family *dwelling*s located in Seismic Design Category C are exempt from the seismic bracing requirements of this section. Wind speed provisions for bracing shall be applicable to detached one- and two-family *dwelling*s.

2. In lieu of the wall bracing requirements of Section 602.10, all stories shall be sheathed with wood structural sheathing panels. Blocking shall be installed if less than 50 percent of the wall length is sheathed. Where blocking is required, all panels shall be fastened at 3 inches (76 mm) on center along the edges and 6 inches (152 mm) on center at intermediate framing. If a wall is sheathed less than 25 percent of its length, then that wall shall be designed in accordance with approved engineering practice. Portal openings designed and constructed in accordance with any of the following shall be acceptable:

a. Method CS-PF in accordance with Section R602.10.4.1.1, Figure R602.10.4.1.1 and the minimum panel widths in Table R602.10.4.2.

b. Method CS-G in accordance with Table R602.10.4.1 using the nailing pattern above and the minimum panel widths in Table R602.10.4.2.

c. Accepted Engineering Practice.

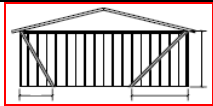
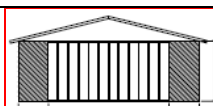

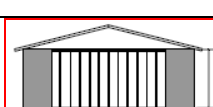
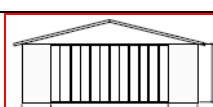
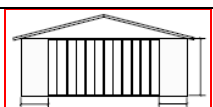
The effective date of this Temporary Rule is October 1, 2012.

This Temporary Rule expires on September 1, 2013.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Table R602.10.1 Bracing Methods. (150310 Item B-14)

**Table R602.10.1
BRACING METHODS^{1,2}**

Method	Minimum Brace Material Thickness or Size	Minimum Brace Panel Length or Brace Angle	Connection Criteria		<i>Illustration of Bracing Method (illustrates method only, not location)</i>
			Fasteners	Spacing	
LIB Let-in Bracing	1x4 wood brace (or approved metal brace installed per manufacturer instructions)	45° angle for maximum 16" oc stud spacing ³	2-8d common nails or 3-8d (2-1/2" long x 0.113" dia.) nails	Per stud and top and bottom plates	
DWB Diagonal wood boards	3/4" (1" nominal)	48"	2-8d (2-1/2" long x 0.113" diameter) or 2 - 1-3/4" long staples	Per stud and top and bottom plates	
WSP Wood structural panel	3/8"	48" ⁴	6d common nail or 8d (2-1/2" long x 0.113" diameter) nail	6" edges 12" field	
SFB Structural Fiberboard Sheathing	1/2"	48" ⁴	1-1/2" long x 0.120" dia. Galvanized roofing nails	3" edges 6" field	
GB Gypsum Board Installed on both sides of wall	1/2"	96" for use with R602.10.2 48" for use with R602.10.3	Min. 5d cooler nails or #6 screws	7" edges 7" field	
PCP Portland cement plaster	3/4" (maximum 16" oc stud spacing)	48"	1-1/2" long, 11 gage, 7/16" diameter head nails or 7/8" long, 16 gage staples	6" o.c. on all framing members	

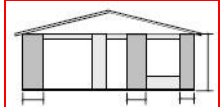
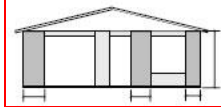
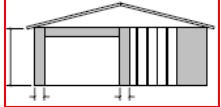
CS-WSP ⁵ Continuously sheathed WSP	3/8"	24" adjacent to window not more than 67% of wall height; 30" adjacent to door or window greater than 67% and less than 85% of wall height. 48" for taller openings.	Same as WSP	Same as WSP	
CS-SFB ⁵ Continuously sheathed SFB	1/2"		Same as SFB	Same as SFB	
PF Portal Frame ^{6,7,8}	7/16"	See Figure R602.10.1	See Figure R602.10.1	See Figure R602.10.1	

Table Notes:

1. Alternative bracing materials and methods shall comply with Section 105 of the North Carolina Administrative Code and Policies, and shall be permitted to be used as a substitute for any of the bracing materials listed in Table R602.10.1 provided at least equivalent performance is demonstrated. Where the tested bracing strength or stiffness differs from tabulated materials, the bracing amount required for the alternative material shall be permitted to be factored to achieve equivalence.
2. All edges of panel-type wall bracing shall be attached to framing or blocking, except GB bracing horizontal joints shall not be required to be blocked when joints are finished.
3. Two LIB braces installed at a 60° angle shall be permitted to be substituted for each 45° angle LIB brace.
4. For 8-foot or 9-foot wall height, brace panel minimum length shall be permitted to be reduced to 36-inch or 42-inch length, respectively, where not located adjacent to a door opening. A braced wall panel shall be permitted to be reduced to a 32-inch length when studs at each end of the braced wall panel are anchored to foundation or framing below using hold-down device with minimum 2,800 lbs. design tension capacity. For detached single story garages and attached garages supporting roof only, a minimum 24-inch brace panel length shall be permitted on one wall containing one or more garage door openings.
5. Bracing methods designated CS-WSP and CS-SFB shall have sheathing installed on all sheathable surfaces above, below, and between wall openings.
6. For purposes of bracing in accordance with Section R602.10.2, two portal frame brace panels with wood structural panel sheathing applied to the exterior face of each brace panel as shown in Figure R602.10.1 shall be considered equivalent to one braced wall panel.
7. Structural fiberboard (SFB) shall not be used in portal frame construction.
8. No more than three portal frames shall be used in a single building elevation.
9. CS-WSP and CS-SFB cannot be mixed on the same story.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R602.10 Wall bracing. (120312 Item B-4)

Replace the 2012 NC Residential Code Sections R602.10 through R602.12 and Temporary Rule with the amended “R602.10 Code and Commentary for 2012 NC Residential Code – 03/06/13” at the following link.

[http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering and Codes/Documents/2012 NCBuilding Code amendments/R602.10%20Code%20and%20Commentary%20for%202012%20NC %20Residential%20Code%20-%20final%2003-06-13.pdf](http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering%20and%20Codes/Documents/2012%20NCBuilding%20Code%20amendments/R602.10%20Code%20and%20Commentary%20for%202012%20NC%20Residential%20Code%20-%20final%2003-06-13.pdf)

The delayed effective date of this Rule is September 1, 2013.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R703.7.4.2 Air space. (151215 Item B-2)

R703.7.4.2 Air space. The veneer shall be separated from the sheathing by an air space of a minimum of a nominal 1 inch (25 mm) but not more than 4 ½ inches (114 mm). An air space that provides drainage and contains mortar from construction shall be permitted.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R703.7.6 Weepholes. (120611 Item B-19)

R703.7.6 Weepholes. Weepholes shall be provided in the outside wythe of masonry walls at a maximum spacing of ~~33~~ 48 inches (~~838~~ 1219 mm) on center. Weepholes shall not be less than 3/16 inches (5 mm) in diameter. Weepholes shall be located immediately above the flashing.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R703.11.3, R703.11.4 Soffit, Flame Spread. (100914 Item B-3)

R703.11.3 Soffit. In One-and Two-Family Dwelling construction using vinyl or aluminum as a soffit material, the soffit material shall be securely attached to framing members and use an underlayment material of either fire retardant treated wood, 23/32 inch wood sheathing or 5/8 inch gypsum board. Venting requirements apply to both soffit and underlayment and shall be per section R806 of the North Carolina Residential Code. Where the property line is 10 feet or more from the building face, the provisions of this code section do not apply.

R703.11.4 Flame Spread. Vinyl siding and vinyl soffit materials when used in One-and Two-Family Dwelling construction shall have a Flame Spread Index of 25 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E-84.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R703.12. Adhered stone or masonry veneer installation. (150310 Item B-15)

R703.12. Adhered stone or masonry veneer installation. Adhered stone or masonry veneer shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Protection against the accumulation of water in the exterior wall assembly shall be provided in accordance with Section R703.6 of this code.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2017.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R802.3 Framing details. (101214 Item B-25)

R802.3 Framing details. Rafters shall be framed to ridge board or to each other with a gusset plate as a tie. Ridge board shall be at least 1-inch (25.4 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Opposing rafters at the ridge must align within the thickness of the ridge member. Regularly spaced hip and valley rafters need not align. At all valleys and hips there shall be a valley or hip rafter not less than 2-inch (51 mm) nominal thickness and not less in depth than the cut end of the rafter. Hip and valley rafters shall be supported at the ridge by a brace to a bearing partition or be designed to carry and distribute the specific load at that point. Where the roof pitch is less than three units vertical in 12 units horizontal (25-percent slope), structural members that support rafters and ceiling joists, such as ridge beams, hips and valleys, shall be designed as beams.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

R807.1 Attic access. (101214 Items B-6, B-26)

R807.1 Attic access. An attic access opening shall be provided to attic areas that exceed ~~100~~ 400 square feet (~~9.29~~ 37.16 m²) and have a vertical height of 60 inches (1524 mm) or greater. The net clear opening shall not be less than 20 inches by 30 inches (508 mm by 762 mm) and shall be located in a hallway or other readily accessible location. A 30-inch (762 mm) minimum unobstructed headroom in the attic space shall be provided at some point above the access opening. See Section M1305.1.3 for access requirements where mechanical equipment is located in attics.

Exceptions:

1. Concealed areas not located over the main structure including porches, areas behind knee walls, dormers, bay windows, etc. are not required to have access.
2. Pull down stair treads, stringers, handrails, and hardware may protrude into the net clear opening.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

R905.2.6 Attachment. (120611 Item B-20)

R905.2.6 Attachment. Asphalt shingles shall have the minimum number of fasteners required by the manufacturer, but not less than four fasteners per strip shingle or two fasteners per individual shingle. Where the roof slope exceeds 21 units vertical in 12 units horizontal (21:12, 175 percent slope), shingles shall be installed as required by the manufacturer.

Exception: Asphalt strip shingles shall have a minimum of six fasteners per shingle where the roof is in one of the following categories:

1. The basic wind speed in accordance with Figure R301.2(4) is 110 miles per hour (177 km/hr) or greater and the eave is 20 feet (6096 mm) or higher above grade.
2. The basic wind speed in accordance with Figure R301.2(4) is 120 miles per hour (193 km/hr) or greater.
3. Special mountain regions in accordance with Figure R301.2(4) that meet exceptions 1 or 2 above.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Energy Conservation Code, Chapter 4
2012 NC Residential Code, Chapter 11
Duct leakage to the outside. (120910 Item B-3)

Amend the 2012 NC Energy Conservation Code, Chapter 4 and 2012 NC Residential Code, Chapter 11 with the attached revisions. The current energy provisions require duct testing to be verified and identify one method of doing so. The proposed language provides an alternative testing method for leakage to the outside. The amended "2012 NCECC, 2012 NCRC, Duct Leakage to the Outside" is published separately at the following link.

[http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering and Codes/Documents/2012 NCBuilding Code amendments/2012%20NCECC,%202012%20NCRC,%20Duct%20Leakage%20to%20the%20Outside%20120910%20B3.pdf](http://www.ncdoi.com/OSFM/Engineering_and_Codes/Documents/2012_NCBuilding_Code_amendments/2012%20NCECC,%202012%20NCRC,%20Duct%20Leakage%20to%20the%20Outside%20120910%20B3.pdf)

The effective date of this Rule is June 1, 2013.
The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code
N1102 Fenestration. (141209 Item B-12)

**TABLE N1102.1
 INSULATION AND FENESTRATION REQUIREMENTS BY COMPONENT^a**

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR ^{b,l}	SKYLIGHT ^b U-FACTOR	GLAZED FENESTRATION SHGC ^{b,e,m}	CEILING R-VALUE ^k	WOOD FRAME WALL R-VALUE ^e	MASS WALL R-VALUE ⁱ	FLOOR R-VALUE	BASEMENT ^c WALL R-VALUE	SLAB ^d R-VALUE & DEPTH	CRAWL SPACE WALL R-VALUE ^c
3	0.35	0.65	0.30	30	13	5/10	19	10/13 ^f	0	5/13
4	0.35	0.60	0.30	38 or 30 cont. ^j	15, 13+2.5 ^h	5/10	19	10/13	10	10/13
5	0.35	0.60	NR	38 or 30 cont. ^j	19, 13+5, or 15+3 ^{eh}	13/17	30 ^g	10/13	10	10/13

l. In addition to the exemption in Section N1102.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

m. In addition to the exemption in Section N1102.3.3, a maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

**TABLE N1102.1.2
 EQUIVALENT U-FACTORS^a**

CLIMATE ZONE	FENESTRATION U-FACTOR ^e	SKYLIGHT U-FACTOR	CEILING U-FACTOR	FRAME WALL U-FACTOR	MASS WALL U-FACTOR ^b	FLOOR U-FACTOR	BASEMENT WALL U-FACTOR ^d	CRAWL SPACE WALL U-FACTOR ^c
3	0.35	0.65	0.035	0.082	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.136
4	0.35	0.60	0.030	0.077	0.141	0.047	0.059	0.065
5	0.35	0.60	0.030	0.061	0.082	0.033	0.059	0.065

e. A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty. When applying this note and using the REScheck “UA Trade-off” compliance method to allow continued use of the software, the applicable fenestration products shall be modeled as meeting the U-factor of 0.35 and the SHGC of 0.30, as applicable, but the fenestration products actual U-factor and actual SHGC shall be noted in the comments section of the software for documentation of application of this note to the applicable products. Compliance for these substitute products shall be verified compared to the allowed substituted maximum U-value requirement and maximum SHGC requirement, as applicable.

N1102.3.5 Thermally isolated conditioned sunroom U-factor and SHGC. The maximum fenestration U-factor shall be 0.40 and the maximum skylight U-factor shall be 0.75. Sunrooms with cooling systems shall have a maximum fenestration SHGC of 0.40 for all glazing.

New windows and doors separating the sunroom from conditioned space shall meet the building thermal envelope requirements. Sunroom additions shall maintain thermal isolation; and shall be served by a separate heating or cooling system, or be thermostatically controlled as a separate zone of the existing system.

Exception: A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a U-factor no greater than 0.55 and, when cooling is provided, a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

N1102.5 Maximum fenestration *U*-factor and SHGC. The area-weighted average maximum fenestration *U*-factor permitted using trade-offs from Section 1102.1.3 shall be 0.40. Maximum skylight *U*-factors shall be 0.65 in zones 4 and 5 and 0.60 in zone 3.

Exception: A maximum of two glazed fenestration product assemblies having a *U*-factor no greater than 0.55 and a SHGC no greater than 0.70 shall be permitted to be substituted for minimum code compliant fenestration product assemblies without penalty.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

N1102.2.3 Access hatches and doors. (101214 Item B-1)

N1102.2.3 Access hatches and doors.

Exceptions:

1. Pull down stair systems shall be weatherstripped and insulated ~~to~~ with a minimum of an R-5 insulation, value such that ~~the~~ The insulation ~~does~~ shall not interfere with proper operation of the stair. Non-rigid insulation materials are not allowed. Additional insulation systems that enclose the stair system from above are allowed. Exposed foam plastic must meet the provisions of the *North Carolina Residential Code*.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2012.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

N1103.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. (120611 Item B-10)

N1103.1.2 Heat pump supplementary heat. Heat pumps having supplementary electric-resistance heat shall have controls that, except during defrost, prevent supplemental heat operation when the heat pump compressor can meet the heating load.

A heat strip outdoor temperature lockout shall be provided to prevent supplemental heat operation in response to the thermostat being changed to a warmer setting. The lockout shall be set no lower than 35 degrees F and no higher than 40 degrees F.

Exception: In lieu of a heat strip outdoor temperature lockout, the following time and temperature electric-resistance control may be used. After six minutes of compressor run time in heat mode, supplemental electric heat shall energize only if the leaving air temperature from the indoor coil is below 90 degrees F. If the indoor coil leaving air temperature exceeds 100 degrees F, supplemental heat shall automatically de-energize, but allow the compressor to continue to operate until the call is satisfied. No thermostat shall initiate supplemental electric heat at any time. Thermostat controlled emergency heat shall not be limited by outdoor temperature. Electric resistance supplemental heat during defrost shall operate normally without limitation.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

[Note: This Rule will also be printed in the 2012 NC Energy Conservation Code, Section 403.1.2.]

R4605.5 Corrosion Resistance. (131210 Item B-7)

R4605.5 In the coastal hazard area and the ocean hazard area, all metal connectors and fasteners outside conditioned spaces shall be hot-dip galvanized steel after fabrication and meet ASTM A 153. Exposed metal connectors, such as tie-down straps on porches, decks, and areas under the structure, shall be a minimum 3/16-inch (5mm) thick, and shall be hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and meet ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153. Stainless steel light-gage metal connectors shall be permitted in exposed locations. Metal connectors of approved equivalent corrosion-resistant material may be accepted. See Table R4605.5.

TABLE R4605.5^a

CORROSION RESISTANCE

(Applies only to Structures Located in Coastal High-Hazard Areas and Ocean Hazard Areas)

	OPEN (exterior, porches, under house)	EXPOSURE LEVEL VENTED/ENCLOSED (attic, floor trusses, enclosed crawl spaces and stud cavity)	CONDITIONED (heated/cooled living areas)
Nails, staples, screws	Hot-dip galvanized	Hot-dip galvanized	_____
Nuts, bolts, washers, tie rods	Hot-dipped galvanized	Hot-dip galvanized	_____
Steel connection plates and straps (3/16" minimum thickness)	Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication	Hot-dip galvanized	_____
Sheet metal connectors, wind anchors, joist hangers, steel joists and beams	Stainless steel or hot-dipped galvanized after fabrication	Hot-dip galvanized after plate fabrication <u>or triple galvanized^b</u>	Hot-dip galvanized <u>or triple galvanized^b</u>
Truss plates	Stainless steel or hot-dipped	Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication, or stainless steel, <u>triple</u>	Standard

	galvanized after fabrication	<u>galvanized^b or in-accordance with TPI-1 of the Truss Plate Institute within 6'-0" of a gable louver, ridge or soffit vent. Otherwise in accordance with TPI 1 of the Truss Plate Institute Standard galvanized^b.</u>	galvanized ^b
--	------------------------------	--	-------------------------

a. Applies only to structures located in Coastal High-Hazard Areas and Ocean High Hazard Areas

b. Triple galvanizing – G185, standard galvanizing – G60 both per ASTM A 653 / A 653M

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Appendix AM104.1 Deck attachment. (131210 Item B-5)

AM104.1 Deck attachment. When a deck is supported at the structure by attaching the deck to the structure, the following attachment schedules shall apply for attaching the deck band to the structure.

AM104.1.1 All structures except brick veneer structures

METHOD	FASTENERS	8' MAX JOIST SPAN	16' MAX JOIST SPAN
1	5/8" Hot dipped galv. bolts with nut and washer ^b and 12d Common hot dipped galv. nails ^c	1@3'-6" o.c. and 2@8" o.c.	1@1'-8" o.c. and 3@6" o.c.
<u>OR</u>			
<u>2</u>	<u>Self-Drilling Screw Fastener^d</u>	<u>12" o.c. staggered</u>	<u>6" o.c. staggered</u>

- a. Attachment interpolation between 8 foot and 16 foot joists span is allowed.
- b. Minimum edge distance for bolts is 2½ inches.
- c. Nails must penetrate the supporting structure band a minimum of 1½ inches.
- d. Self-drilling screw fastener shall be an approved screw having a minimum shank diameter of 0.195" and a length long enough to penetrate through the supporting structure band. The structure band shall have a minimum depth of 1-1/8". Screw shall have an evaluated allowable shear load for Southern Pine to Southern Pine lumber of 250 pounds and shall have a corrosion resistant finish equivalent to hot dipped galvanized. Minimum edge distance for screws is 1-7/16". A maximum of ½" thick wood structural panel is permitted to be located between the deck ledger and the structure band.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2015.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

AM106 and AM111 Tables – southern pine spans. (140610 Item B-11)

Section AM106: Delete partial reprint of Table R502.3.1(2) without substitution.
(Only the partial reprints in Appendix M are deleted.)

Figure AM111: Delete partial reprint of Table R502.5(1) without substitution.
(Only the partial reprints in Appendix M are deleted.)

The effective date of this Rule is **May 1, 2015.**

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

AM111 Figure – note concerning guards. (140610 Item B-10)

Revisions to note concerning guards in FIGURE AM111

Guards at a Minimum 36” required per R312.1 with 30” drop and opening limits per R312.2 & R312.3 (4” on vertical pickets, 6” on horizontal and ornamental guardrails), top rail and post to support 200 lbs with infill to meet 50 lbs per Table R301.5 and footnotes.

The delayed effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

N-1 and N-2 Tables – wood and flitch plate beams. (140610 Item B-12)

Appendix N: Delete Tables N-1 and N-2 and substitute attached tables.

The effective date of this Rule is **May 1, 2015.**

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

TABLE N-1
WOOD BEAMS AND GIRDERS ALLOWABLE LOADS IN POUNDS PER LINEAR FOOT ^{1, 2, 3, 4}

2X8 (1 ½" X 7 ¼")						
Span L ⁶ (feet)	Spruce-Pine-Fir ⁵			Southern Pine		
	2 ply	3 ply	4 ply	2 ply	3 ply	4 ply
3	1305	1956	2610	1692	2538	3383
4	979	1468	1958	1013	1519	2026
5	736	1104	1472	648	972	1296
6	511	767	1022	450	675	900
7	375	563	751	331	496	661
8	287	431	575	253	380	506
9	227	341	454	200	300	400
10	184	276	368	162	243	324
12	114	172	228	113	169	225
14	72	108	144	72	108	144

2X10 (1 ½" X 9 ¼")						
Span L ⁶ (feet)	Spruce-Pine-Fir ⁵			Southern Pine		
	2 ply	3 ply	4 ply	2 ply	3 ply	4 ply
3	1665	2498	3330	2158	3238	4317
4	1249	1873	2498	1426	2139	2852
5	999	1499	1998	913	1369	1825
6	763	1144	1525	634	951	1268
7	560	840	1120	466	698	931
8	429	643	858	357	535	713
9	339	508	678	282	423	563
10	275	412	549	228	342	456
12	191	286	381	158	238	317
14	140	210	280	116	175	233

2X12 (1 ½" X 11 ¼")						
Span L ⁶ (feet)	Spruce-Pine-Fir ⁵			Southern Pine		
	2 ply	3 ply	4 ply	2 ply	3 ply	4 ply
3	2025	3038	4050	2625	3938	5250
4	1519	2278	3038	1969	2953	3938
5	1215	1823	2430	1266	1898	2531
6	1013	1519	2025	879	1318	1756
7	753	1130	1507	646	969	1291
8	577	856	1154	494	742	989
9	456	684	911	391	586	781
10	369	554	738	316	475	633
12	256	385	513	220	330	439
14	188	283	377	161	242	323

Table N-1 Notes:

1. Lumber grade is #2 intended for an in-service moisture content of 19% or less.
2. Deflection is limited to L/360.
3. Load duration factor used in calculations is 1.0.
4. **Bearing** and lateral support for the member **shall** be provided. Support for the member ends **shall** provide a continuous load path from the bearing to the foundation.
5. Values tabulated are for Spruce-Pine-Fir, not Spruce-Pine-Fir (South). Values tabulated for Southern Pine are based on design values published by the American Wood Council in an addendum to NDS dated March 2013.
6. Span L, is clear span. Effective span for bending and deflection is clear span plus 3 inches.

TABLE N-2
FLITCH PLATE BEAM ALLOWABLE LOADS
In Pounds Per Linear Foot ^{1,2,3,4,5}

(2) 2x6 with Plate Indicated					
Span L ⁶ (feet)	Plate Size / (Beam Weight per Foot)				
	¼"x5" Plate (8 lb./ft.)	⅜"x5" Plate (10 lb./ft.)	½"x5" Plate (13 lb./ft.)	⅝"x5" Plate (15 lb./ft.)	¾"x5" Plate (17 lb./ft.)
6'-0"	643	825	1006	1188	1370
7'-0"	473	606	739	873	1006
8'-0"	362	464	566	668	771
9'-0"	272	348	425	502	579
10'-0"	198	254	310	366	422
11'-0"	149	191	233	275	317
12'-0"	115	147	179	212	244

(2) 2x8 with Plate Indicated					
Span L ⁶ (feet)	Plate Size / (Beam Weight per Foot)				
	¼"x7" Plate (11 lb./ft.)	⅜"x7" Plate (14 lb./ft.)	½"x7" Plate (17 lb./ft.)	⅝"x7" Plate (20 lb./ft.)	¾"x7" Plate (23 lb./ft.)
6'-0"	1150	1499	1849	2199	2549
7'-0"	845	1102	1359	1615	1872
8'-0"	647	843	1040	1237	1434
9'-0"	511	666	822	977	1133
10'-0"	414	540	666	792	917
11'-0"	342	446	550	654	758
12'-0"	287	375	462	550	637
13'-0"	230	300	369	439	509
14'-0"	184	240	296	352	408
15'-0"	150	195	240	286	331
16'-0"	123	161	198	236	273

(2) 2x10 with Plate Indicated					
Span L ⁶ (feet)	Plate Size / (Beam Weight per Foot)				
	¼"x9" Plate (14 lb./ft.)	⅜"x9" Plate (18 lb./ft.)	½"x9" Plate (22 lb./ft.)	⅝"x9" Plate (26 lb./ft.)	¾"x9" Plate (30 lb./ft.)
6'-0"	1642	2145	2649	3153	3657
7'-0"	1206	1576	1946	2317	2687
8'-0"	923	1207	1490	1774	2057
9'-0"	730	954	1177	1401	1625
10'-0"	591	772	954	1135	1317
11'-0"	488	638	788	938	1088
12'-0"	410	536	662	788	914
13'-0"	350	457	564	672	779
14'-0"	302	394	487	579	672
15'-0"	263	343	424	504	585
16'-0"	231	302	373	443	514
17'-0"	204	267	330	393	456
18'-0"	182	238	294	350	406
19'-0"	155	203	250	298	345
20'-0"	133	174	214	255	296

(2) 2x12 with Plate Indicated					
Span L⁶ (feet)	Plate Size / (Beam Weight per Foot)				
	1/4"x11" Plate (18 lb./ft.)	3/8"x11" Plate (22 lb./ft.)	1/2"x11" Plate (27 lb./ft.)	5/8"x11" Plate (32 lb./ft.)	3/4"x11" Plate (36 lb./ft.)
6'-0"	2297	3006	3715	4425	5134
7'-0"	1688	2209	2730	3251	3772
8'-0"	1292	1691	2090	2489	2888
9'-0"	1021	1336	1651	1966	2282
10'-0"	827	1082	1338	1593	1848
11'-0"	683	894	1105	1316	1527
12'-0"	574	752	929	1106	1283
13'-0"	489	640	791	943	1094
14'-0"	422	552	682	813	943
15'-0"	367	481	594	708	821
16'-0"	323	423	522	622	722
17'-0"	286	374	463	551	639
18'-0"	255	334	413	492	570
19'-0"	229	300	371	441	512
20'-0"	207	271	334	398	462
21'-0"	188	245	303	361	419
22'-0"	171	224	276	329	382
23'-0"	156	205	253	301	349
24'-0"	140	183	226	269	312

Table N-2 Notes:

1. Lumber species and grade is #2 Southern Pine intended for an in-service moisture content of 19% or less. Design values used were published by the American Wood Council in an addendum to NDS dated March 2013. For Spruce-Pine-Fir lumber using the tabulated flitch plate allowable loads will be slightly conservative.
2. Tabulated values are based on ASTM A36 structural steel plate.
3. Deflection is limited to L/360.
4. Load duration factor used in calculations is 1.0.
5. **Bearing** and lateral support for the member **shall** be provided. Support for the member ends **shall** provide a continuous load path from the bearing to the foundation.
6. Span L, is center to center of supports. Wood side plates and steel flitch plates shall be continuous throughout the span.

2012 NC Residential Code

N-1 and N-2 Tables – wood and flitch plate examples. (140610 Item B-13)

Appendix N Example at the top of Page 918: Change as follows

By using Table N-1, the required beam is 4 @ 2x12 ~~SYP~~ or SPF

OR

By using Table N-2, the required minimum flitch beam is 2 @ 2x8 with ~~1/2"~~ 5/8" x 7" steel plate bolted with 1/2" bolts **spaced** at 2' o.c.

Appendix N Example at the bottom of Page 918: Change as follows

By using Table N-1, the required beam is ~~3~~ 4 @ 2x12 Southern Pine or 4 @ 2x12 Spruce-pine-fir

OR

By using Table N-2, the required minimum flitch is 2 @ 2x8 with ~~3/8"~~ 1/2" x 7" steel plate bolted with 1/2" bolts spaced at 2' o.c.

The effective date of this Rule is **May 1, 2015**.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

2012 NC Residential Code

Docks, Piers, Bulkheads and Waterway Structures. (140610 Item B-14)

NC Residential Code: *Revisions attached.*

Commentary is included for clarification only and not subject to review.

The effective date of this Rule is January 1, 2016.

The Statutory authority for Rule-making is G. S. 143-136; 143-138.

Revision to NC RESIDENTIAL Code

Revisions to Section R101.2

R101.2 Scope. The provisions of the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-family Dwellings* shall apply to the construction, *alteration*, movement, enlargement, replacement, repair, equipment, use and occupancy, location, removal and demolition of detached one- and two-family dwellings and townhouses not more than three stories above *grade plane* in height with a separate means of egress and their *accessory buildings* and *structures*.

Exception: Live/work units complying with the requirements of Section 419 of the *North Carolina Building Code* shall be permitted to be built as one- and two-family *dwellings* or townhouses. Fire suppression required by Section 419.5 of the *North Carolina Building Code* when constructed under the *North Carolina Residential Code for One- and Two-family Dwellings* shall conform to Section 903.3.1.3 of the *International Building Code*.

R101.2.1 Accessory buildings. Accessory buildings with any dimension greater than 12 feet (3658mm) must meet the provisions of this code. Accessory buildings may be constructed without a masonry or concrete foundation, except in coastal high hazard or ocean hazard areas, provided all of the following conditions are met:

1. The accessory building shall not exceed 400 square feet (37m²) or one story in height;
2. The building is supported on a wood foundation of minimum 2x6 or 3x4 mudsill of approved wood in accordance with Section R317; and
3. The building is anchored to resist overturning and sliding by installing a minimum of one ground anchor at each corner of the building. The total resisting force of the anchors shall be equal to 20 psf (958 Pa) times the plan area of the building.

R101.2.2 Accessory structures. Accessory structures shall meet the provisions of this code. Accessory structures not listed below are not required to meet the provisions of this code ~~except decks, gazebos, retaining walls as required by Section R404.4, detached masonry chimneys built less than 10' from other buildings, pools or spas per appendix G, or detached carports.~~

1. Decks, See Appendix M.
2. Gazebos.
3. Retaining wall, See Section R404.4.
4. Detached masonry chimneys located less than 10 feet from other buildings or lot lines.
5. Swimming pools and spas, See Appendix G.
6. Detached carports.
7. Docks, piers, bulkheads, and waterways structures, See Section R324.

Exception: Portable lightweight aluminum or canvas type carports not exceeding 400 sq ft or 12' mean roof height and tree houses supported solely by a tree are exempt from the provisions of this code.

Revisions to Section R202

ACCESSORY STRUCTURE. An accessory structure is any structure not roofed over and enclosed more than 50% of its perimeter walls, located on one- and two-family dwelling sites which is incidental to that of the main building. Examples of accessory structures are fencing, decks, gazebos, arbors, retaining walls, barbecue pits, detached chimneys, tree houses (supported by tree only), playground equipment, and yard art, docks, piers, etc. ~~Accessory structures are not required to meet the provisions of this code except decks, gazebos, retaining walls as required by Section R404.4, detached masonry chimneys built less than 10² from other buildings, pools or spas per appendix G, or detached carports~~

BOAT SLIP. A berthing place for one or two watercraft where the watercraft can be securely moored to cleats, piling, or other devices while the boats are in the water. Boat slips are commonly configured as “side-ties” or as single or double loaded “U” shaped berths.

DOCK. A structure extending alongshore or out from the shore into a body of water, usually accommodating multiple boat slips, to which boats may be moored in order to load or unload people or cargo.

PIER. An elevated deck structure, usually pile supported, extending out into the water from the shore.

Addition of Section R324

(Note: The following is to be considered underlined in its entirety.)

**SECTION R324
DOCKS, PIERS, BULKHEADS AND WATERWAY STRUCTURES**

R324.1 General. *Docks, piers, bulkheads and waterway structures shall be constructed in accordance with Chapter 36 of the North Carolina Building Code.*

Exceptions: Structures complying with the following are not required to meet the provisions of this code. A permit is required to verify these limitations and a plan **shall** be submitted for approval that the exceptions have been met.

Commentary: *Code requirements for plumbing, mechanical, and electrical installations shall apply.*

1. Fixed piers associated with a **one- or two- family** dwelling meeting all of the following:
 - 1.1 A maximum of four boat slips for a single owner of a **one- or two- family** dwelling or two adjacent, riparian owners.
 - 1.2 A maximum height of 15 feet measured from deck to mud line at any location along the pier.

Commentary: *This limitation on pier height is intended to limit pile stresses due to lateral loads. Pile sizes and embedment should be chosen considering forces due to moving water generated by flood stage or storm surge, waves, scour, and size of vessels moored to the pier. Where piles cannot be adequately embedded to resist lateral loads and uplift, fixed piers should be anchored to a soil strata capable of resisting the uplift and lateral loads. Wave forces due to large private or commercial vessels are not considered in these limitations and should be accommodated by the owner or contractor prior to construction. See Figure 1.*

- 1.3 A maximum normal pool depth of 13 feet on lakes and ponds and a maximum mean low water depth of 7 feet in other locations.

Commentary: *Limiting depth of water limits lateral loads on the piles and vessel sizes. See Figure 1.*

1.4 A maximum walkway width of 6 feet.

Commentary: The 6 foot maximum limitation on fixed pier width is intended to limit occupant load, limit storage on the pier, and prevent vehicles from operating on the pier. This limitation is consistent with the limitations for CAMA's general permitting process. See Figure 1.

1.5 A maximum pile spacing of 8 feet, in both directions.

Commentary: Pile spacing is limited to spans consistent with 2x8 joists or stringers at 24 inch maximum spacing and 2x10 split girders. Recommended pile size is 6 inches x 6 inches minimum. The intent is that exempted structures be capable of supporting a live load of 40 psf, even though design by a registered engineer is not required. Lateral loads on piles are also reduced by limiting the pile spacing. Wave forces due to large private or commercial vessels are not considered in these limitations and should be accommodated by the owner or contractor prior to construction. See Figure 3.

1.6 A maximum of 576 sq. ft. for non-walkways areas.

Commentary: Non-walkway areas include sitting areas, staging areas for vessel embarkation and disembarkation, and platforms for swimmers or fishermen. Limiting the area of these platforms is intended to limit occupancy and the potential for overload due to storage.

1.7 A maximum boat slip length of 40 feet.

Commentary: The boat slip size limitation is intended to limit the size of the vessels moored to the dock, which in turn limits both occupant load on the pier and lateral loads on the pier.

1.8 A maximum roofed area of 576 sq. ft. with an additional maximum 2 foot overhang.

Commentary: See Figure 3.

1.9 Constructed with no enclosed or multilevel structures.

1.10 Supports a boatlift with a maximum design capacity no greater than 16,000 pounds.

2. Floating docks associated with a one- or two- family dwelling meeting all of the following:

2.1 A maximum of four boat slips for a single owner of a one- or two- family dwelling or two adjacent, riparian owners.

2.2 A maximum normal pool depth of 20 feet for docks with guide piles on lakes and ponds and a maximum mean low water of 10 feet for docks with guide piles in other locations.

Commentary: Guide piles should be long enough to prevent the dock from floating off the piles at flood stage or during a 100 year storm surge. Pile sizes should be chosen considering forces due to moving water generated by flood stage or storm surge, waves, scour, and size of vessels moored to the dock. Wave forces due to large private or commercial vessels are not considered in these limitations and should be accommodated by the owner or contractor prior to construction. See Figure 2.

2.3 A maximum boat slip length of 40 feet.

Commentary: The boat slip size limitation is intended to limit the size of the vessels moored to the dock, which in turn limits both occupant load on the dock and lateral loads on the dock.

2.4 Finger piers, crosswalks or other floating surfaces having a minimum width of 3 feet wide to a maximum of 6 feet wide, except for a single 8 foot x 16 foot section.

Commentary: A minimum width for walking surfaces on floating docks is specified to provide some measure of stability. Owners should be aware that this is a rule of thumb and should check with the manufacturer of the floating dock system for limits on stability for their particular system. The 6 foot maximum limitation on floating walking surfaces is intended to limit occupant load, limit storage on the dock, and prevent vehicles from operating on the dock. See Figure 2.

2.5 When constructed with a roof the following conditions exist:

- i. Basic design wind speed is 90 mph or less;
- ii. Ground snow load is 15 psf or less (See Figure 4);
- iii. A maximum eave height of 10 feet;
- iv. A maximum roof slope of 4:12;
- v. A maximum roofed area of 576 sq. ft. with an additional maximum 2 foot overhang;
- vi. A minimum boat slip width of 12 feet;
- vii. A minimum floating dock width of 4 feet along both sides of the boat slip;
- viii. A maximum dead load of 12 psf;
- ix. Floating structures supporting roof structures are balanced or anchored to reduce the possibility of tipping.

2.6 Constructed with no enclosed or multilevel structures.

2.7 Supports a boat lift with a maximum design capacity no greater than 16,000 pounds.

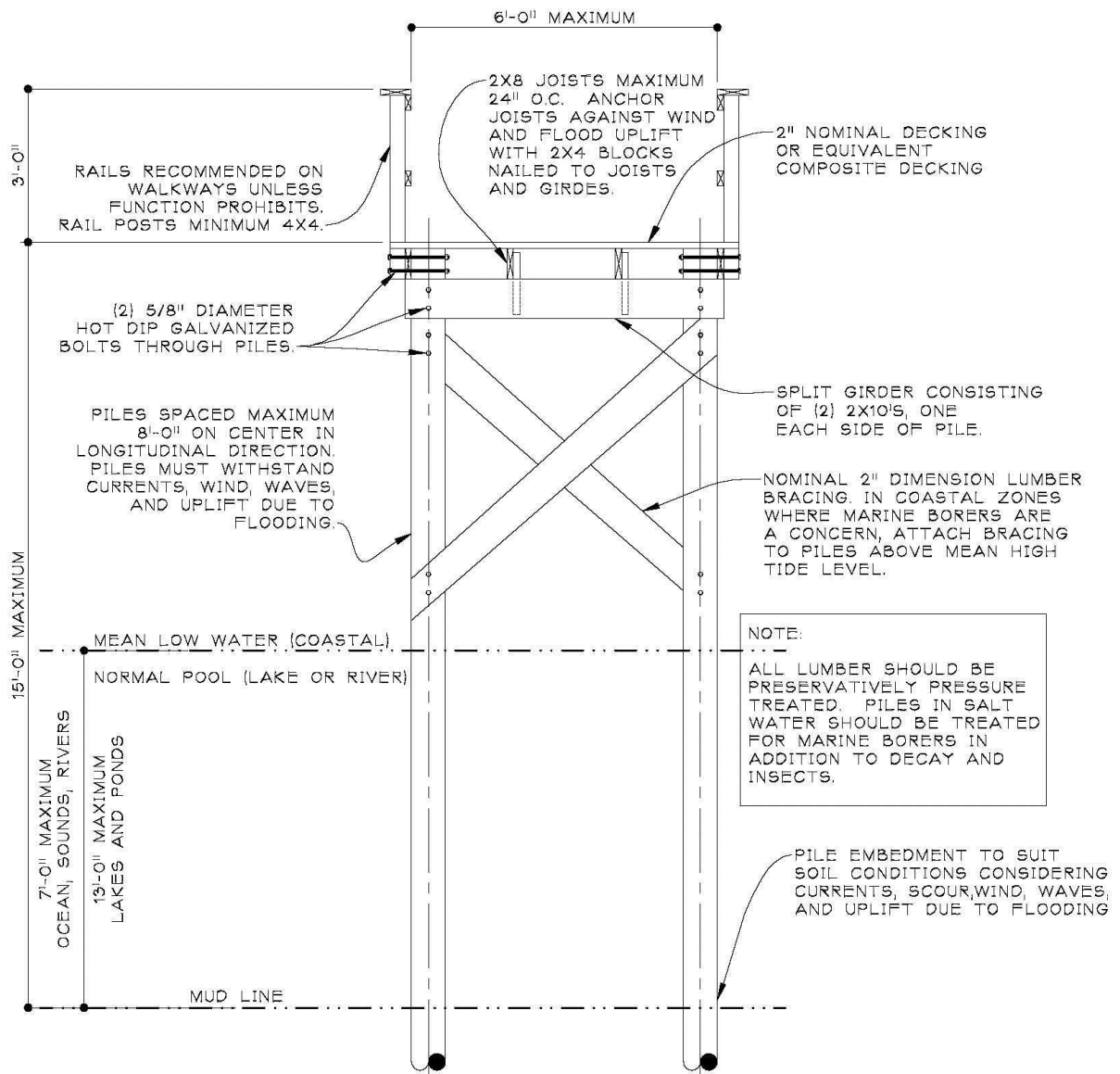


FIGURE 1: FIXED PIER WALKWAY SECTION

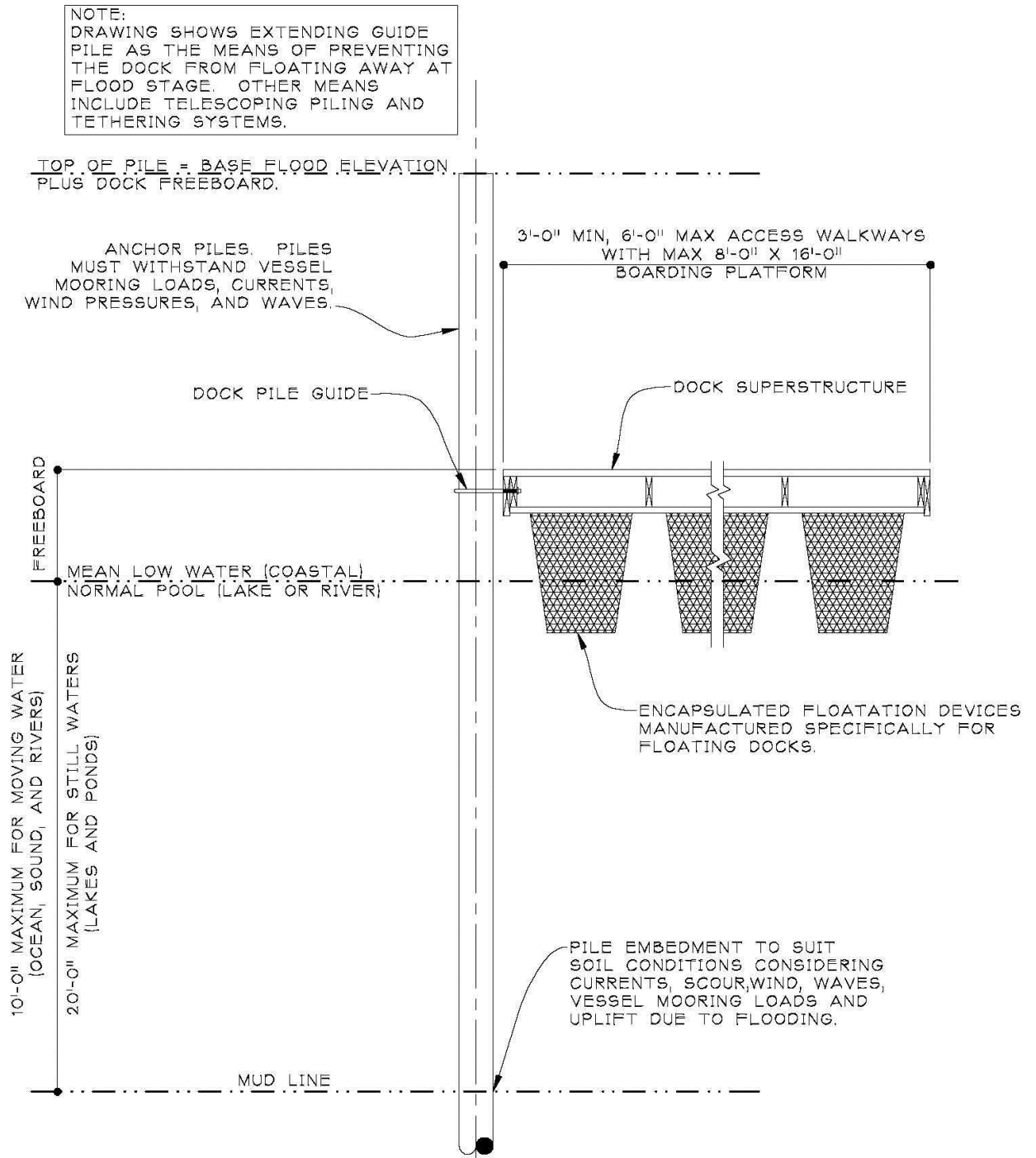
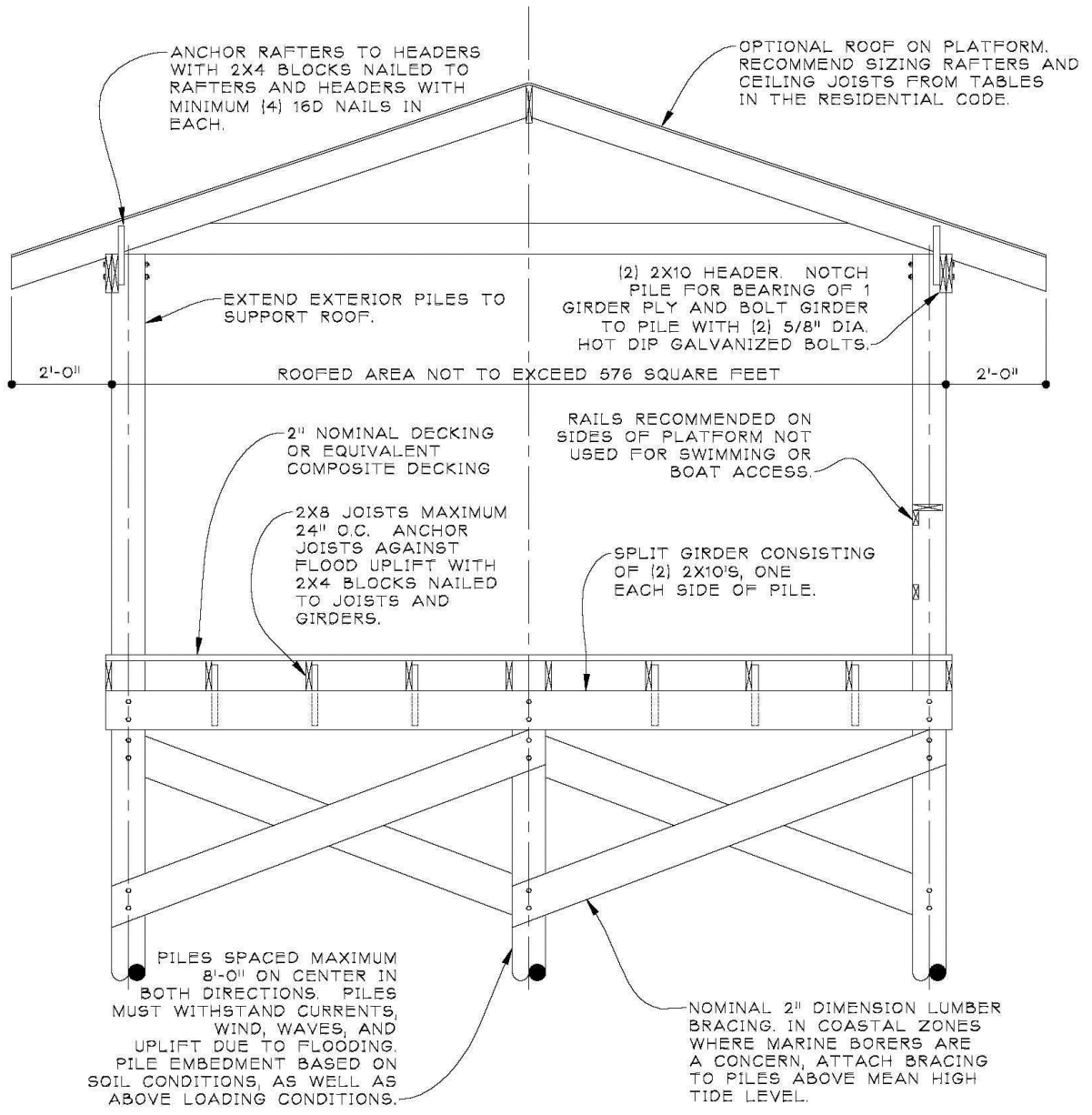


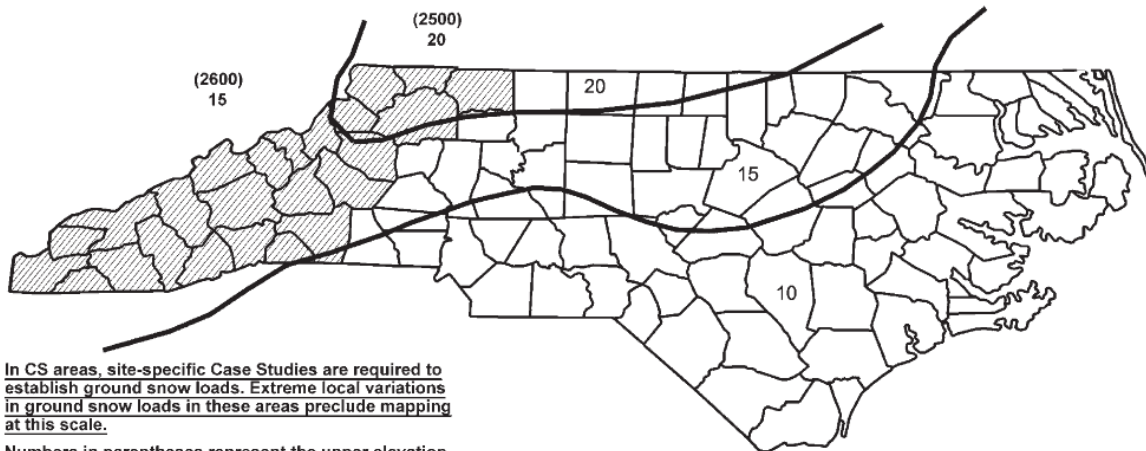
FIGURE 2: FLOATING DOCK SECTION



NOTE:
 ALL LUMBER SHOULD BE PRESERVATIVELY PRESSURE TREATED. PILES IN SALT WATER SHOULD BE TREATED FOR MARINE BORERS IN ADDITION TO DECAY AND INSECTS. BOLTING SAME AS FIGURE 1.

NOTE:
 PLATFORM FLOOR AREA NOT TO EXCEED 400 SQUARE FEET. MAXIMUM DECK HEIGHT ABOVE MUD LINE AND NORMAL POOL DEPTH SHOWN IN FIGURE 1 ALSO APPLY TO THIS FIGURE.

FIGURE 3: FIXED PIER PLATFORM SECTION



In CS areas, site-specific Case Studies are required to establish ground snow loads. Extreme local variations in ground snow loads in these areas preclude mapping at this scale.

Numbers in parentheses represent the upper elevation limits in feet for the ground snow load values presented below. Site-specific case studies are required to establish ground snow loads at elevations not covered.

To convert lb/sq ft to kNm², multiply by 0.0479.

To convert feet to meters, multiply by 0.3048.

FIGURE 4: GROUND SNOW LOADS

